



EL-MONASSER

GUIDE

New Hello!

By a group of supervisors

الصف الأول الإعدادي
الفصل الدراسي الأول



ENGLISH

التطبيق التفاعلي
للتعلم عن بعد



1st
Prep.
2022
FIRST TERM



Check your English

VWB pages 70 and 71

Vocabulary

age (n)	عمر / سن	jump (ed) (v)	يقفز
favourite (adj)	مفضل	weather (n)	الطقس
toy animal (n)	حيوان لعبة	rainy (adj)	ممطر
park (n)	حديقة عامة	restaurant (n)	مطعم
sports (n)	العباب رياضية	twice (adv)	مرتين
cook (n)	طباخ	tail (n)	ذيل
gate (n)	بوابة	shop (n)	محل

1 This is a fact file of some students. Look and make sentences.

1. Name : Basel

Age : 12

Likes : football

Favourite food : fish with rice

2. Name : Fatma

Age : 13

Likes : books

Favourite food : chicken

3. Name : Maher and Hany

Age : 12

Likes : tennis

Favourite food : ice cream

4. Name :

Age :

Likes :

Favourite food :

1. His name is Basel. He is twelve. He likes football. His favourite food is fish with rice.

2.

3.

2 Complete fact file 4 for you and write sentences like those in Exercise 1.

4.

3 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى ملفات واختر الإجابة الصحيحة. (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. The bag is

a. new

b. Injy's

c. Lama's

d. Lama's sister's

2. The pencil case is
 a. red b. blue c. yellow d. green
3. Lama has got
 a. a book about sport b. a toy animal
 c. an English book d. a book about animals
4. She has also got
 a. some oranges b. an orange c. an apple d. a ball
5. The girls are in
 a. a school b. a house c. a park d. a shop

4 Read and correct the mistakes in these sentences :

1. Hatem don't like sports. Hatem doesn't like sports.
2. I want play tennis this afternoon.
3. Look ! Those children jumping very high.
4. I visit my cousins yesterday.
5. You speak English very good.

5 Read the text, then answer the questions :

Mr Taha is a teacher in Port Said. He teaches English. On Monday, Tuesday and Wednesday, he makes himself a sandwich for lunch. He eats it in the school. On Thursday and Friday, he usually walks home. His wife makes him his favourite lunch: chicken and potatoes. Yesterday, it rained a lot. The weather is sometimes rainy in Port Said. Mr Taha did not want to walk home, so he went to a restaurant near the school. He loves the food there. The cook makes it all himself.

1. Where does Mr Taha work ?

He works in a school in Port Said.

2. What does he usually eat for lunch ?

3. What does he usually do twice a week ?

4. Why did Mr Taha not want to walk home yesterday ?

5. Is the weather always rainy in Port Said ?

6. Who makes the food in the restaurant ?

7. What does the underlined word there refer to ?

6 Do these words have the same sound ? Listen and put (✓) or (X).

هل هذه الكلمات تحتوي على نفس الصوت ؟ استمع إلى معارك وضع علامة (✓) أو (X). (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. washed / talked

☐

2. called / waited

☐

3. blue / duck

☐

4. cake / home

☐

5. shop / chick

☐

6. father / brother

☐

7. candy / July

☐

7. tail / gate

☐

7 What did they do at the weekend ? Look at the table and answer the questions.

	Friday	Saturday
Ashraf	play football	visit cousins
Yunis	bake a cake	work in his father's shop
Riham	visit friends	play tennis

1. Did Yunis play football on Friday ? No, he didn't. He baked a cake.

2. Did Ashraf work in his father's shop on Saturday ?

3. What did Ashraf do on Friday ?

4. Did Riham visit her cousins on Friday ?

5. Where did Yunis go on Saturday ?

6. What did Riham do on Saturday ?

8 Write about your weekend. What do you usually do ? What did you do yesterday ?

My family and me

SB pages 2-11 WB pages 72-78



Objectives

• Reading :

An interview with twins; Heidi;
a text about a gymnast

• Writing :

A paragraph on hobbies; a person in your family

• Listening :

An interview with twins

• Speaking :

Talking about your family; asking questions

• Language :

Pronouns; present simple

• Life Skills :

Self-management

• Values :

Love of family

• Issues :

Awareness of rights and duties; loyalty and belonging



SB pages 2 - 5 WB pages 72 & 73

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

sport (n)	رياضة	twins (n)	توائم
band (n)	فرقة موسيقية	quiz (n)	امتحان موجز / قصير
voluntary (adj)	تطوعي	interview (n)	مقابلة شخصية
research (n)	بحث	hobby (n)	هواية
diary (n)	مفكرة يومية	chess (n)	لعبة الشطرنج
drums (n)	طبول		

- تنويه** ▪ **Key Vocabulary** هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
 ▪ **Master your Vocabulary** يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
 ▪ **Glossary** لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 1

SB pages 2 & 3 WB page 72

great-grandchildren	أبناء الحفيد - الحفيدة	football player (n)	لاعب كرة قدم
baby cousin (n)	ابن / ابنة العم / العمّة / الخال / الخالة (الرضيع)	discuss (ed) (v)	بتناقش
		both	كلّ من / كلاهما
skim (med) (v)	يتصفح (بسرعة)	work (ed) (v) , (n)	يعمل - عمل (اسم لا يعد)
parents (n)	الوالدين	clap (ped) (v)	يصفق

Lesson 2

SB pages 4 & 5 WB page 73

children's hospital (n)	مستشفى أطفال	age (n)	عمر / سن
glossary (n)	قاموس / معجم	favourite (adj)	مفضل
musical instruments (n)	آلات موسيقية	dictionary (n)	قاموس
What kind ?	ما نوع ... ؟	match (n)	مباراة
story (n)	قصة	together (adv)	معاً / سوياً

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
write يكتب	wrote	written
tell يخبر	told	told
show يوضح / يبين	showed	shown
find يجد	found	found
say يقول	said	said
meet يقابل	met	met
win يفوز	won	won
drive يقود	drove	driven
throw يرمى	threw	thrown
hit ينقر	hit	hit

Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite العكس
true حقيقي	false مزيف
different (from) مختلف عن	the same (as) نفس الشيء / مطابق
first الأول	last الأخير
finish ينهي	start يبدأ
show يوضح	hide يُخفي
male ذكر	female أنثى

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

Family members أفراد العائلة	
aunt	your mother's or father's sister خالة / عمّة
uncle	your mother's or father's brother خال / عم
grandfather	your mother's or father's father جد
grandmother	your mother's or father's mother جدة
brother	your parent's son / a boy or man with the same parents as you أخ

sister	your parent's daughter / a girl or woman with the same parents as you	أخت
cousin	your aunt and uncle's child (العمة / الخال / الخالة)	ابن / ابنة (العم / العمة / الخال / الخالة)
parents	your mum and dad	الوالدين
son	a boy child	ابن
daughter	a girl child	ابنة
dad	another word for father	اب
mum	another word for mother	ام
great-grandfather	your grandfather's father	الجد الأكبر
great-grandchildren	the children of your grandchildren	أبناء الحفيد / الحفيدة
Other definitions / تعريفات أخرى		
swimming	moving your body through water	سباحة
drums	a musical instrument which you hit with your hands or a stick to make a noise	طبول
twins	two children born at the same time	توائم
voluntary work	work you do without getting money	عمل تطوعي
football match	a game of football	مباراة كرة قدم
chess	a board game for two people	لعبة الشطرنج
band	a group of people singing and/or playing musical instruments together	فرقة موسيقية
basketball	a ball sport for two teams of five players. To play basketball, you throw the ball through a net	كرة السلة

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

do	voluntary work	يقوم بعمل تطوعي	listen to	music	يستمتع إلى الموسيقى
	work	يؤدي عمل		the teacher	يستمتع إلى المعلم
go	swimming	يمارس السباحة		the radio	يستمتع إلى الراديو
have	a hobby	لديه هواية	watch	a football match	يشاهد مباراة كرة قدم
make	a noise	يحدث ضوضاء			

II Reading and Listening

Reading

on Lesson 1 SB page 3

Hello ! My name's Ali. I'm 13. This is a **picture**⁽¹⁾ of my family.

My mum's name is Amira. She's a teacher. Next to her is my dad. His name is Adel. He's a teacher, too. **Both**⁽²⁾ my **parents**⁽³⁾ are teachers at my school.



They have one **daughter**⁽⁴⁾ – she's my sister, Lamia, and she's 9 years old.

And they have two sons – me, and my brother, Khaled. He's 11.

Our **grandmother**⁽⁵⁾ is 64 and she's **called**⁽⁶⁾ Huda. She's my mum's mother. My mum's father is our **grandfather**⁽⁷⁾ – he's called Omar. He's 65. Their daughter's called Judy. She's my mum's sister and she's my **aunt**⁽⁸⁾. My uncle's called Marwan. He is a doctor. Their son is called Tarek, and he's my **cousin**⁽⁹⁾. It's his birthday today – he's 3 years old.

Check Vocabulary

(1) صورة	(2) كلاهما	(3) الوالدين	(4) أخته	(5) جدة
(6) تُسمى / تدعى	(7) جد	(8) عمّة / خالة	(9) العمّة / الخالة	ابن العم / الخال

Listening



on Lesson 1 WB page 72

Lara : Hi ! My name's Lara and this is my family. That's my brother.

His name's Ayman. Lina and Hatem are our parents. We have one cousin, Khadeeja. Her parents are my uncle and aunt. Their names are Imad and Dina. What about you ? What's your name ?

Reading

• on Lesson 2 SB page 4

An interview with twin brothers

Meet Hazem and Hatem. They are brothers and they are both *aged*⁽¹⁾ 12. They have *the same*⁽²⁾ *parents*⁽³⁾ and the same birthday. They're *twins*⁽⁴⁾!

What are your *hobbies*⁽⁵⁾?

Hazem : I like sports. I play basketball on Mondays and Wednesdays. I go swimming on Tuesdays and I play *football*⁽⁶⁾ on Saturdays.

Hatem : And he watches football matches on TV on Saturday evenings. He loves football!

Hazem : I love football!

Hatem : I don't like football but I like music. I play the *drums*⁽⁷⁾ and I listen to music.

Hazem : He plays the drums in a *band*⁽⁸⁾.

Do you have any hobbies that you both like?

Hazem : We play chess *together*⁽⁹⁾ on Saturdays. Hatem usually wins.

Hatem : Yes, that's true! And on Saturday afternoons we do *voluntary work*⁽¹⁰⁾.

What kind of voluntary work?

Hazem : We help in the children's hospital.

Hatem : We play games with the children and read them stories. It's great!



Check Vocabulary

(1) يبلغ من العمر	(2) نفس الشيء	(3) الوالدين	(4) توأم	(5) هوايات
(6) كرة قدم	(7) طبول	(8) فرقة موسيقية	(9) معاً	(10) عمل تطوعي

Listening



• on Lesson 2 SB page 5

Interviewer : Can I ask you some more questions ?

Hazem : Yes, of course.

Interviewer : Hazem, when do you play basketball ?

Hazem : I play basketball on Mondays and Wednesdays.

Interviewer : And when do you play football ?

Hazem : I play football on Saturdays and I watch football matches on the TV on Saturday evenings.

Interviewer : When do you go swimming ?

Hazem : I go swimming on Tuesdays.

Interviewer : Wow, you are busy ! Hatem, when do you play the drums ?

Hatem : I play the drums on Mondays at home. And I play the drums in a band on Thursdays.

Interviewer : What do you do on Tuesdays and Wednesdays ?

Hatem : I listen to music. I like pop music.

Interviewer : What do you do on Saturdays ?

Hatem : I help my mother and I do voluntary work with Hazem. And on Sundays I play chess with Hazem or my dad.

Interviewer : Thank you both.

Hazem : You're welcome.



General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 both / all

• both

كلاهما (تدل على شخصين أو شيئين معاً)

ex.: - Where are Ali and Ashraf ?

- They **both** went to the club.

• all

كل / جميعاً (تدل على عدد أكثر من شخصين أو شيئين)

ex.: - Where are Ali, Ashraf and Tarek ?

- They **all** went to the club.

2 (be) called

يسمى / يدعى

- ex.:** - This girl is called Rodayna.
- What is your teacher called?

call (ed) (v)

يتصل / ينادى

- Salma is calling her father now.

3 on + (مفرد) = every + يوم (جمع)

تعتبر من الكلمات الدالة على زمن المضارع البسيط.

- ex.:** - **S8** We play chess on Saturdays / every Saturday.
- He plays football on Fridays / every Friday.

4 play

يلعب

- play

• لاحظ استخدام (play) مع الألعاب التي بها كرة أو مع بعض الهوايات

- ex.:** - We play games with children.

- play

يعزف

• تستخدم play مع الآلات الموسيقية مسبقة بـ the بمعنى يعزف.

- ex.:** - I play the drums in a band.

5 (be) aged = (be) years old = (be) years in age

ذو عمر / سن

- ex.:** - Basem is aged 12.
- Basem is 12 years old.
- Basem is 12 years in age.

6 The same

نفس (الشيء)

- ex.:** - They wear the same colour.
- They are the same age.

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

in pairs	في ثنائيات	write about	يكتب عن
look at	ينظر إلى	talk about	يتحدث عن
belong to	ينتمي إلى / يخص	a picture of	صورة لـ
work hard	يعمل بجد	on TV	على شاشة التلفزيون
clap for	يصفق من أجل	on the radio	في الإذاعة / الراديو
arrive at	يصل إلى (مكان صغير)	help in the children's hospital	يساعد في مستشفى للأطفال
arrive in	يصل إلى (مكان كبير)		

That's true !	هذا صحيح !	proud of	فخور بـ
It's great !	هذا عظيم !	for no money = for free	بلا مقابل مادي
tell about	يخبر عن	of course	بالطبع

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

- They have the same age and parents, they are
a. twins b. relatives c. double d. couple
- You do when you want to find information on the internet.
a. diary b. research c. quiz d. hobby
- This afternoon, I'll have a/an for a new job in an oil company.
a. shower b. research c. interview d. meeting
- Doing something with no money is a work.
a. bad b. voluntary c. noisy d. silly
- A is a group of people who play music together.
a. parent b. band c. class d. chorus

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

- My is my father's or mother's sister. (Rafah - North Sinai 2020)
a. uncle b. aunt c. daughter d. son
- WB** Maher voluntary work at a hospital. (امتحان مجمع القاهرة - رياض الفرج ٢٠٢١)
a. plays b. makes c. does d. watches
- WB** are musical instruments which you hit with your hands or sticks.
a. Drums b. Guitars c. Flutes d. Harps
- "....." are your parents. (Tanta - Gharbia 2020)
a. Son and daughter b. Mum and dad
c. Cousin and uncle d. Brother and sister

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

- "Female" is the opposite of ".....".
a. meal b. mail c. mall d. male
- Ali and Tamer wear the colour.
a. as b. same c. similar d. every

12. The manager the most important problems during the meeting.
 a. played b. discussed c. called d. won

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

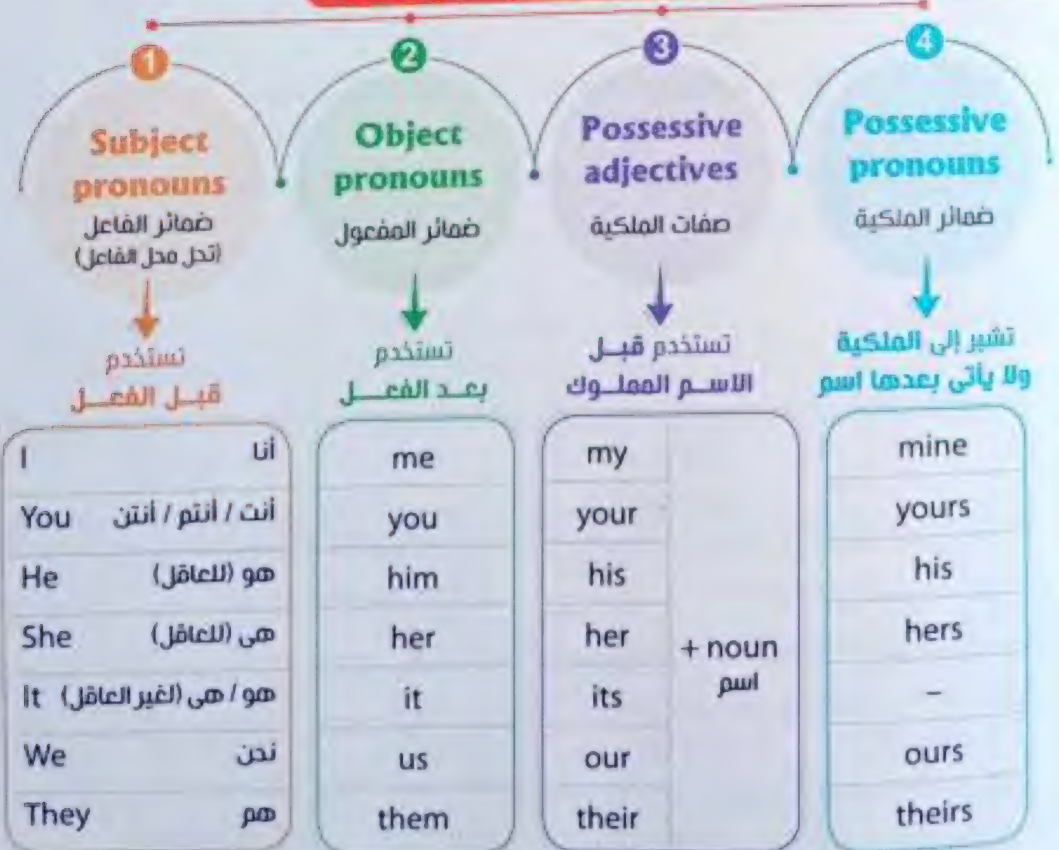
13. My father and mother are "60" and "53".
 a. old b. aged c. age d. ago
14. This big house to me. I bought it last year.
 a. has b. belongs c. finds d. owns
15. Omar and Ahmed are my cousins.
 a. Two b. Each c. All d. Both
16. Our English teacher is Ayman.
 a. sold b. told c. called d. made



Language



1. Pronouns الضمائر



2. Using possessive adjectives and pronouns

استخدام صفات الملكية وضمائر الملكية

We use possessive adjectives to show something belongs to somebody :

تستخدم صفات الملكية لتبين أن شيء ما يخص شخص ما :

- Marwan is **my** uncle.
- Nader and Mona are **their** parents.

• لاحظ أن : صفات الملكية تتبعها اسم (الاسم المملوك).

لاحظ أن : ضمير الملكية = اسم + صفة الملكية

- This is **my** pen.
- This pen is **mine**.

- It's **her** bag.
- It's **hers**.

• لاحظ أن : ضمائر الملكية لا يأتي بعدها اسم وتحل محل صفة الملكية والاسم المملوك معًا.

Important Notes on Pronouns

ملاحظات هامة على الضمائر

• عند السؤال عن الملكية نستخدم كلمة الاستفهام Whose كالآتي :

Whose + (noun) اسم ?

ex.: - Whose bag is it ?

- It's **my** bag. = It's **mine**.

• هناك تعبيرات تستخدم للتعبير عن الملكية :

- This is **my** car.

= This car is **mine**.

= This car **belongs to** me.

= I **have** a car.

= I **own** this car.

• ضمائر الفاعل (تأتي في بداية الجملة) تحل محل الفاعل وتسبق الفعل (الأساسي أو المساعد).

ex.: - I play tennis every week.

- He eats lunch at 3 : 00 p.m.

- They are my parents.

• ضمائر المفعول تحل محل المفعول وتتبع الفعل أو تتبع حروف الجر

ex.: - Please, tell **me** about your family.

- Huda is our grandmother. We love **her** so much.

- Can you come with **me** to the theatre ?

Multiple choice notes

ملاحظات لسؤال الاختيار من متعدد

- Toka is (me - my - mine - I) daughter. (She - Her - Hers - Herself) is in grade three.

• في المثال السابق تم اختيار (my) لأنها يتبعها اسم وتم اختيار (She) لأنها فاعل للجملة الثانية (تسبق الفعل المساعد is)

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

➔ SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. **WB** Our parents are proud of _____ because we work hard at school.

a. we b. our c. ours d. us

2. **WB** Clap for football players. _____ have played very well.

a. Them b. They c. Their d. Theirs
(امتحان مجمع دمياط - الزرقا - ٢٠٢١)

3. **SB** My sister's name is Ola. _____'s 7.

a. Her b. She c. Hers d. Him
(Seelja - Assiut, 2020)

4. He told _____ that she was wrong.

a. her b. his c. your d. hers
(Al Amria - Alex, 2020)

5. This room belongs to my daughters. It's _____.

a. they b. their c. them d. theirs
(South Giza 2020)

6. **WB** Throw the ball to _____, please. I am waiting.

a. me b. my c. I d. mine
(Ain Shams - Cairo 2020)

➔ El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. _____ played well and scored many goals.

a. Me b. Mine c. I d. My

8. Give this mobile to _____.

a. she b. him c. our d. their

9. _____ mobile is this ? - It's Rokaya's.

a. Who b. Whose c. When d. Where

10. This is _____ computer. He bought it last week.

a. mine b. my c. his d. hers

11. Tarek and I visit grandfather every Friday.

- a. they b. our c. its d. her

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB, WB & Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. This is not our school. It's your. (Anseem - Giza 2020) (.....)

2. WB Can your give me your pen, please ? (.....)

3. It's not my camera. My is new. (El Fashn - Beni Suef 2020) (.....)

4. SB Today is hers birthday. (.....)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

5. There are three girls and these are them books. (.....)

6. This book belongs for him. (.....)

7. They're her bags. They're his. (.....)

8. Ali bought a new camera for her daughter. (.....)

9. Who car is this ? - It's mine. (.....)

10. All the players in our team like his captain. (.....)

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 1 SB page 3 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ٢٣ ثم قم بالتدرب على اجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions :

- Giving the main idea إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

- Ali's family.

- Extracting information استخراج المعلومات

2. Who's Omar ?

.....

3. What is Ali's cousin called ?

.....

مهارات الكتابة

2. Writing Corner

A. Read the sentences

1. We are brothers and we are both aged 12. نحن إخوة كلنا عمرة 12 عام.
 2. I play football, but my brother plays chess. ألعب كرة القدم لكن أخي يلعب الشطرنج.
 3. I don't like music, but he likes it. أنا أحب الموسيقى لكن هو يحبها.
 4. We do voluntary work. نقوم بعمل تطوعي.
 5. We play games with children and read them stories. نلعب الألعاب مع الأطفال ونقرأ لهم قصص.

B. Building sentences

© Read and complete :

belongs - His - mine - Theirs - Their

1. This is my father. _____ name is Waleed.
 2. I have two sons. _____ names are Ali and Hany.
 3. You can't take this jacket. It's _____.
 4. This house _____ to us. Dad bought it last week.

تنويه

يعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات
 اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين
 قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

- Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"Your family"

اندرّب على كتابة مقالة إنشائية.

3. Speaking Corner

معارف التحدث

Talking about your family

التحدث عن عائلتك

1. My dad's name is اسم الأب. He is عمره.
 2. My mother's name is اسم الأم. She is عمرها.
 3. My brother's name is اسم الأخ. He is عمره.
 4. My sister's name is اسم الأخت. She is عمرها.
 5. My (mother / father) is a / an وظيفة.

General Exercises

On

LESSONS

1 & 2

• Understand

• Apply

• Create



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. What's your favourite sport ?
a. Basketball b. Tennis c. Football d. Hockey
2. When do you play basketball ?
a. On Fridays b. On Mondays c. Every day d. On Sundays
3. Who do you play it with ?
a. My father b. My mother c. My sister d. My friends
4. Is basketball an interesting sport ?
a. No, it isn't. b. Yes, it is. c. I don't know. d. No, it hasn't.

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Omar is asking Ali about his grandfather.

Omar : Can I ask you some questions ?

Ali : Yes, (1) course.

Omar : What's the name of your grandfather ?

Ali : He is (2) Yasser.

Omar : How (3) is he ?

Ali : He is 50 (4)

Omar : (5) is his hobby ?

Ali : He is interested in playing chess.

Omar : Do you like chess ?

Ali : Of course. I like it.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Toka and Mona look like each other. They are
a. sons b. twins c. brothers d. uncles
2. Salma plays the guitar in a
a. hand b. pond c. band d. match

- 3. My sister is my mother's and father's
a. grandmother b. daughter c. aunt d. mother
- 4. I don't know this word, I'll look it up in a
a. dictionary b. basket c. vase d. van
- 5. We played a match and we scored many goals.
a. tennis b. swimming c. diving d. football
- 6. Mai helps in a children's hospital for free. She likes work.
(Hehia - Sharkia 2020)
a. voluntary b. school c. easy d. writing
- 7. The children of your grandchildren are your
a. sons b. great-grandchildren
c. parents d. great-grandfathers
- 8. Little Salma is playing with mother.
a. his b. its c. her d. their
- 9. We are having dinner with friends.
a. our b. his c. her d. their
- 10. That's Omar's book. It's
a. him b. he c. his d. her

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

- 1. The girls are going to the park with her friends. (.....)
- 2. This watch belongs to mine. (.....)
- 3. My wife is call Sama. (.....)
- 4. What pencil is this ? - It's Ali's. (.....)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

مسابقة في نهاية الكتاب

"Your family"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

add (ed) (v)	يضيف	conversation (n)	محادثة
orphan (n)	يتيم	country (n)	دولة
mountain (n)	جبل	attic (n)	سندرة / سقيفة (غرفة علوية للتخزين)
city (n)	مدينة (كبيرة)	adventure (n)	مغامرة

تنويه • **Key Vocabulary** هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 3

SB pages 6 & 7 WB page 74

correct (ed) (v), (adj)	يصحح - صحيح	How long ...?	كم المدة ... ؟
minutes (n)	دقائق	airport (n)	مطار
communicate (d) (v)	يتواصل	live (d) (v)	يعيش

Lesson 4

SB page 8 WB page 75

end (n)	نهاية	one day (adv)	ذات يوم
---------	-------	---------------	---------

Countries and Cities

دول ومدن

Morocco	دولة المغرب	South Africa	دولة جنوب أفريقيا
England	إنجلترا	Oman	دولة عمان
Cape Town	كاب تاون (مدينة في جنوب أفريقيا)	Switzerland	سويسرا

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
think يفكر / يعتقد	thought	thought
fly يطير / يسافر جوا	flew	flown
feel يشعر	felt	felt

hear	يسمع	heard	heard
catch	يمسك / يلدق بـ	caught	caught
learn	يتعلم	learned/learnt	learned/learnt

Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite العكس
high مرتفع	low منخفض
top قمة	bottom قاع
important مهم	unimportant غير مهم
arrive يصل	leave يغادر
city المدينة	the country / countryside الريف

You can see ...

in a city	in the mountains
airport مطار	goats ماعز
hospital مستشفى	sheep أغنام / خراف
park منتزه	birds طيور
shops محلات	flowers زهور

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

adventure مغامرة	an exciting activity
goat ماعز	a mountain animal you can eat or get milk from
orphan يتيم	a child with no mother or father
city مدينة	a place with lots of houses, shops and people
attic سندرة / سفينة (غرفة علوية في سطح المنزل)	the top room in a house
mountain جبل	a high area of land, higher than the land around it

II Listening and Reading



Listening

• on Lesson 3 SB page 7

Sami : My family lives in Cairo, but my dad works in Paris, France.
He goes to the airport⁽¹⁾ on Sundays and he catches a plane⁽²⁾ to Paris.

Check Vocabulary

يلدق بـ (1) | مطار (2)



It **takes**⁽³⁾ five hours to fly there. And then he catches a plane home to Egypt on Thursday evening. He works very hard.

On Saturdays we play football in the park and we play chess. I love my dad and I'm happy when he's at home.

Aya : My grandmother and grandfather live in South Africa. They live next to the **beach**⁽⁴⁾ in Cape Town. They have a beautiful house. We go and visit them, but it's **a long way**⁽⁵⁾. It takes twelve hours to fly there !

I talk to them on the phone but they don't have a computer so we can't **make a video call**⁽⁶⁾. I would like to see them every day but I can't.

Check Vocabulary

(3) يستغرق (4) شاطئ (5) طريق طويل (6) بجرى مكالمة فيديو



Reading

• on Lesson 3 WB page 74

I am Hassan. My family *lives* in Alexandria, but my dad *doesn't work* in Egypt. He works in London. He *goes* to the airport on Sunday evenings and he *catches* a plane to England. He comes home on Thursday evenings. On Saturday, I *don't go* to school, and my father doesn't work. We *play* chess or we *go* to the park. On Sunday mornings, we go swimming. My brother *is* three and he *doesn't* swim. He watches us !



Videoscript

Lesson 3 SB page 6

Narrator : Senet⁽¹⁾ is a very old Egyptian game. You can see it in this picture. It is about 3.000 years old.

Narrator : Look at these people at the Pharaonic Village museum⁽²⁾ in Cairo. They like senet, too.

Narrator : Today, people play a game like senet. It's called chess.

Narrator : Two people play chess⁽³⁾. Each person has got white or black pieces. It is not an easy game. Some people play it for six hours or more !

Check Vocabulary

(1) لعبة الفرعونية القديمة (2) متحف القرية الفرعونية (3) لعبة الشطرنج

Narrator : Bassem Amin is an Egyptian chess player⁽⁴⁾. He is from Tanta and he is very famous⁽⁵⁾. He is very good at chess.

Narrator : Chess is a popular⁽⁶⁾ game in Egypt. There are many chess clubs⁽⁷⁾ and some children have chess lessons after school. They also play it at home with their parents.

Narrator : Do you play chess ?

Check Vocabulary

{4} اندية للشطرنج {5} مشهور {6} شعبي / محبوب {7} لـعب شطرنج

Reading

on Lesson 4 SB page 8

Heidi (By Johanna Spyri)

Heidi is the story of an orphan⁽¹⁾ girl. She goes to live with her grandfather in Switzerland⁽²⁾. Her grandfather is an old man. He lives in a small house in the mountains⁽³⁾ and he has lots of goats. Heidi sleeps in a bed in the attic⁽⁴⁾ of the house. She drinks goat's milk and eats bread and cheese.

Every day she walks in the mountains with the goats, her grandfather and her friend⁽⁵⁾, Peter. She sees birds and flowers. She is very happy!

But one day, Heidi's aunt arrives and takes her to the city. Heidi doesn't like the city and she is very sad to be away from her grandfather, Peter and the goats.

Heidi has lots of adventures⁽⁶⁾ in the city.



Check Vocabulary

{1} يتيم {2} سويسرا {3} جبال {4} غرفة علوية للتخزين {5} صديق {6} مغامرات



General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 with

يستخدم حرف الجر ليدل على الملكية بمعنى «ذو»

ex.: - **Sb** A child **with** no mother or father is an orphan.

- I can see a man **with** long hair.

2 sheep

خروف / أغنام (تعامل معاملة الاسم المفرد والجمع)

ex.: - I bought a **sheep** from the market yesterday.

(مفرد)

- **Sheep** have wool on them.

(جمع)

3 country - the country - city - town - village

* **country**

دولة

ex.: - Egypt is a big **country** in Africa.

* **the country = the countryside**

الريف

ex.: - Living in **the country** is comfortable مريح.

* **city**

مدينة كبيرة

ex.: - Alexandria is a beautiful **city**.

* **town**

مدينة صغيرة

ex.: - Shoubra El Kheima is a busy **town**.

* **village**

قرية

ex.: - I like going to my **village** in Sham El Neseem.

4 in order - order

* **in order**

بالترتيب

ex.: - Put these pictures **in** the correct **order**.

* **order**

طلب / أمر / يطلب

ex.: - We should follow our teacher's **orders**.

- I'll **order** a cup of tea for you.

5 like

* **like**

يحب

ex.: - What do you **like** to have ?

* **like**

يشبه (تستخدم للوصف)

ex.: - What do you think living in the mountains is really **like** ?

Important expressions & prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

away from	بعيداً عن	lots of = a lot of	كثير من
think of + (n. / inf. + ing)	يفكر في	live in	يعيش في (مكان)
		live with	يعيش مع (شخص)
take to (شخص) (مكان)	يأخذ (شخص) إلى (مكان)	take + (time) to + inf.	يستغرق وقت لكي ...
in the correct order	في الترتيب الصحيح	It takes three hours to reach Alexandria.	يستغرق ثلاث ساعات للوصول إلى الإسكندرية.
at the end of	في نهاية	feel + (صفة)	يشعر بـ
in the summer	في فصل الصيف	- She feels happy.	
communicate with	يتواصل مع	come home	يصل للمنزل
(be) right to + inf.	يكون حقاً في ...	compare ... with	يقارن ... بـ
at the top of ...	في قمة	make a video call	يجري مكالمة فيديو

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

- A person who doesn't have a father or mother is called a / an _____.
a. member b. orphan c. cousin d. friend
- A/An _____ is the top room in a house.
a. city b. office c. attic d. shop
- Salma likes _____ stories as they are exciting and dangerous.
a. funny b. comic c. adventure d. children
- When you _____ five and seven, you get twelve.
a. take b. add c. give d. think

SB, WB and Previous Exams

- WB A / An _____ is very high.
a. list b. menu c. mountain d. adventure
(SB - WB - Previous Exams)
- Farmers get _____ from goats.
a. bread b. meat c. rice d. eggs
(Nasser - Hani 2010)
- SB A _____ is an animal that is like sheep.
a. lion b. goat c. dog d. tiger
(Essa - Lami 2012)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

8. What happened at the _____ of the film ?
a. country b. right c. timetable d. end
9. English people live in _____ .
a. France b. Egypt c. Morocco d. England
10. Egypt is a big _____ in Africa.
a. city b. country c. village d. mountain
11. We always have a/an _____ with our teacher about studying English.
a. conversation b. fight c. interview d. match

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

12. It _____ twelve hours to fly to Cape Town.
a. makes b. takes c. gives d. talks
13. What is your feeling when you are away _____ your parents ?
a. from b. to c. on d. at
14. I _____ happy when I see my friend, Ahmed.
a. fall b. fill c. feel d. fail
15. Salma is _____ a video call now.
a. making b. doing c. delivering d. eating
16. Now, you can communicate _____ your friends easily using smartphones.
a. in b. on c. with d. about

III Language

The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Formation التكوين

I
They
we
you
فاعل جمع

+ inf.
المصدر

Affirmative Statements

الجملة الخبرية
المثبتة

He
She
It
فاعل مفرد
+ inf. + s/es/ies
المصدر

ex. - We usually play tennis on Friday.
- My grandparents sometimes use a computer.

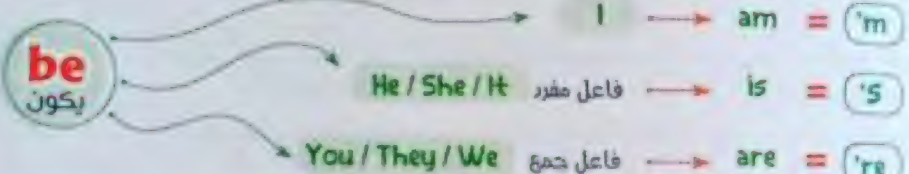
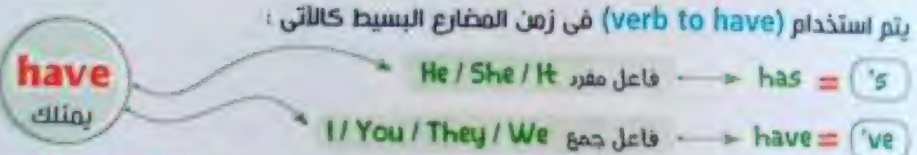
ex. - Rodina/Ali sometimes listens to the radio.



لاحظ أن :

١. يضاف للفعل (s) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It).
ex. - Marwa usually **plays** tennis on Fridays.
٢. يضاف للفعل (es) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It) إذا كان منتهياً بـ (ss , ch , sh , o , x) :
ex. - My brother often **watches** TV after lunch.
٣. يضاف للفعل (ies) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He / She / It) إذا كان منتهياً بـ (y) مسبوقة بحرف ساكن ويحذف حرف (y) :
ex. - Amal always **studies** hard for her exams.

لاحظ أن :

١. يتم استخدام (verb to be) في زمن المضارع البسيط كالآتي :

٢. يتم استخدام (verb to have) في زمن المضارع البسيط كالآتي :


key words كلمات دالة

always دائماً usually عادة often غالباً
 sometimes أحياناً never أبداً

- لاحظ أن ظروف التكرار السابقة تسبق الفعل الأساسي في الجملة.
 - She usually gets up early.
- لاحظ أيضًا أن ظروف التكرار السابقة تتبع (V.to be).
 - She is usually late for school.
- أما ظرف التكرار (مدة + every) إما أن يأتي أول الجملة أو في نهايتها.
 - Every day, I go to school.
 - I go to school every day.

عند السؤال عن ظروف التكرار (عدد مرات حدوث الفعل) نستخدم كلمة الاستفهام (How often) بمعنى كم مرة ... ؟

- How often do/does + فاعل + inf. ?

- How often do you play football ?

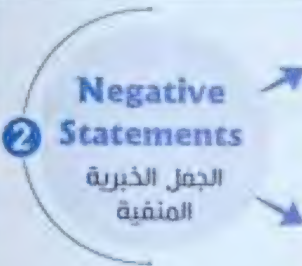
وللإجابة نستخدم أحد ظروف التكرار

- always / usually / often / sometimes / never

- I usually play football.

أو ذكر عدد مرات الفعل

- I play football once / twice a week.



I / we / you / they + don't + inf.
اسم جمع المصدر

ex. I don't get up at six o'clock on Friday.

He / she / it + doesn't + inf.
اسم مفرد المصدر

لاحظ أن :

حرف (s) ي حذف من الفعل عند النفي.

ex. He doesn't play football every Thursday.

(never) تستخدم في النفي مع عدم حذف (s) مع المفرد الغائب.

ex. The bus never stops near my house.

(a) Yes/No questions :

(أ) السؤال بـ "هل" :



DO + I / we / you / they + inf. ... ?
المصدر

ex. Do you speak English ?

- Yes, I do.

- No, I don't.

does + he / she / it + inf. ... ?
المصدر

ex. Does she cook well ?

- Yes, she does.

- No, she doesn't.

لاحظ أن حذف حرف (s) من الفعل عند السؤال ب (Does):

(b) Wh-question :

(ب) السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

كلمة الاستفهام + **do** + I / we / you / they + **inf.** ?
does + he / she / it المصدر

ex. - What do you study ?

- Where does she go ?

Usage الاستخدام

يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن :

١. الحقائق الثابتة (facts) خاصة الحقائق العلمية والقوانين والحقائق المرتبطة بالكون والطبيعة :

ex.: The sun always rises in the east.

٢. عادات وأحداث متكررة (habits & repeated actions) :

ex.: - Maha gets up early every day.

- She usually goes to school on foot.

- He often plays football on Fridays.

Multiple choice notes

ملاحظات لسؤال الاختيار من متعدد

1. Salma always a bike on Friday.

a. ride b. rides c. riding d. is riding

تم اختيار (rides) لأن هذا حدث يعبر عن عادة لوجود ظرف التكرار (always) بالإضافة أن Salma فاعل مفرد فنختار الفعل المضاف له (s).

2. My father work on Saturday.

a. don't b. aren't c. doesn't d. isn't

تم اختيار (doesn't) لأن فاعل الجملة مفرد (My father) فيكون النفي في زمن المضارع البسيط باستخدام (doesn't + inf.).

3. Lions meat.

a. eat b. eats c. eating d. doesn't eat

تم اختيار (eat) لأن الفاعل جمع والجملة تعبر عن حقيقة ثابتة.

4. He late.

a. never is b. is never c. always is d. often is

تم اختيار (is never) لأن ظرف التكرار يأتي بعد (V.to be).

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. Nabila like cooking. (Soushi Giza 2020)

- a. don't b. isn't c. doesn't d. wasn't

2. SB How does Sami when his dad is at home ?

- a. feel b. feels c. felt d. feeling

3. He shopping every week.

- a. go b. goes c. going d. gone (El Fashn - Beni Suef 2020)

4. SB I don't to music.

- a. listens b. listen c. listening d. listened (امتحان مجمع الجيزة - الهرش ٢٠٢١)

5. WB Hany loves basketball. He it every day. (امتحان مجمع المنصورة - منف ٢٠٢١)

- a. plays b. play c. played d. playing

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. She always to her work early.

- a. go b. went c. going d. goes

7. The bus stops near my house.

- a. don't b. isn't c. doesn't d. never

8. Where does your friend ?

- a. live b. lives c. lived d. living

9. The sun us heat and light.

- a. gives b. giving c. is giving d. give

10. They to school early.

- a. usually comes b. usually come c. comes usually d. come usually

11. Over a billion people Chinese as their first language.

- a. speak b. spoke c. speaks d. speaking

12. She her hands three times a day.

- a. wash b. washes c. is washing d. washing

13. I don't early on holidays.

- a. gets up b. got up c. get up d. getting up

14. An engineer new schools.

- a. build b. is built c. builds d. building

15. We all _____ our country.
 a. loving b. be loved c. love d. loves
16. Which sport _____ Youssef like to do ?
 a. do b. have c. has d. does

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

- SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة
1. She don't like fish. (Zefta - Gharbia 2020) (_____)
2. Salma plays always basketball. (Rafah - North Sinai 2020) (_____)
3. SB I plays the drums in a band. (_____)
4. WB Maher always do voluntary work at hospital. (_____)

➤ El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

5. He usually play football. (_____)
6. Do you like reading ? - Yes, I am. (_____)
7. They writes English well. (_____)
8. Where do your father work ? (_____)

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة 8 SB page 4 lesson on Reading من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ٣٨ ثم قم بالتدرب على اجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

A. Answer the following questions :

- **Giving the main idea** إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

- **Extracting information** استخراج المعلومات

2. In which country does Heidi live ?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- **Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context** تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص

3. The word "orphan" in the text means
 a. has no father or mother b. has a father and mother
 c. has no friends d. has no money

2. Writing Corner

معارف الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

1. Heidi is an orphan girl. ١. هايدى فتاة يتيمة.
2. She went to live with her grandfather. ٢. ذهبت لتعيش مع جدها.
3. Her grandfather is a farmer. ٣. يعمل جدها فلاحاً.
4. She sleeps in a bed in the attic. ٤. تنام هايدى في سرير في سقيفة (غرفة علوية).
5. She is very happy. ٥. هي سعيدة جداً.

B. Building sentences

⊙ Read and complete :

don't - Do - lives - walk - never - doesn't

1. Hala in Cairo.
2. I have a computer.
3. He goes to school on Friday.
4. you work in Egypt ?
5. How often does she to school ?

تلويح

بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرس، قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

- Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"Your favourite story"

3. Speaking Corner

معارف التحدث

Asking and answering questions

توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها

Questions



- Do you listen to music ?
هل تستمع إلى الموسيقى ؟
- Does she play chess ?
هل هي تلعب شطرنج ؟

Answers



- Yes, I do.
- No, she doesn't.

General Exercises

on

LESSONS 3 & 4

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Habiba is asking Nada about her family.

Habiba : Where do you live, Habiba ?

Nada : I live in Cairo (1) my family.

Habiba : Have you got a brother or sister ?

Nada : Yes, I (2) got a brother.

Habiba : (3) is his name ?

Nada : He is called Ali.

Habiba : (4) is your hobby, Nada ?

Nada : I like to (5) swimming.

Habiba : Goodbye, Nada.

Nada : See you, Habiba.

2 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Samar is an **orphan** girl. She went to live with her uncle Adnan who was a shepherd راعى غنم in the Western Desert. He lived in a small house and he had a lot of goats and camels. Samar slept in a bed made from animal's skin and drank goat's milk. She ate bread and cheese. She made friends with a female camel which she called Felfela. She loved her and **they** went on long walks in the desert. Samar had a lot of adventures in the desert. She loved the life of desert and mountains.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.

2. What does Adnan have ?

3. What do you think of life in the desert ?

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to

a. Samar b. Adnan c. Felfela d. a & c

5. The word "**orphan**" means

a. has no father or mother b. has no friends
c. has no brothers d. has no sisters

6. Felfela is a camel.

a. male b. female c. bad d. baby

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- You can get wool from
a. giraffes b. elephants c. sheep d. tigers
- Sleeping in a/an is sometimes comfortable.
a. pool b. attic c. street d. circus
- SB** He goes to the to catch his plane to Paris on Sunday.
a. port b. station c. pavement d. airport
- Living in the desert has a lot of
a. houses b. adventures c. rooms d. sheep
- Nada doesn't lunch.
a. makes b. made c. making d. make
- Heidi is an girl. She has no father or mother.
a. orphan b. unkind c. old d. ugly
- He clever and helpful.
a. is always b. always is c. never is d. sometimes is
- SB** Heidi is very sad to be from her grandfather.
a. way b. away c. why d. weight
- On Sundays, we swimming.
a. go b. do c. listen d. play
- Which hobby Ali like doing ?
a. do b. to do c. does d. done

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

- He don't want to stay here. (.....)
- He live in a small house in the mountains. (.....)
- On Fridays, we don't goes to school. (.....)
- Water boiling when we heat it. (.....)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجالس العمل في نهاية المطاف

"Voluntary work"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

athlete (n)	لاعب رياضي	partner (n)	شريك / زميل
gymnast (n)	لاعب جفياز	studies (n)	دراسات
gymnastics (n)	رياضة الجفياز	balance (d) (v), (n)	يلزن / توازن
diagram (n)	رسم توضيحي	train (ed) (v)	يتدرب / يتمرن
Olympics (n)	ألعاب أوليمبية	busy life	حياة مليئة بالعمل
mathematics (n)	مادة الرياضيات	physics (n)	مادة الفيزياء
achieve (d) (v)	يلجز / يحقق (أهداف)	athletics (n)	ألعاب قوى

- تنويه** • **Key Vocabulary** هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- **Master your Vocabulary** يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
- **Glossary** لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 5

SB page 9 WB page 76

topic (n)	موضوع	present (ed) (v)	يعرض / يقدم
idea (n)	فكرة	answer (ed) (v), (n)	يجيب - إجابة
related (adj)	مرتبط / متصل	writing tip (n)	نصيحة للكتابة
best (adj)	أفضل	family tree (n)	شجرة العائلة

Lesson 6

SB page 10 WB page 77

stay (ed) (v), (n)	يقيم / يمشك - إقامة	dream (ed) (v), (n)	يحلم - حلم
description (n)	وصف	club (n)	نادي

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
lose يفقد - يخسر	lost	lost

Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite العكس
busy مشغول	free غير مشغول / حر
healthy صحي	unhealthy غير صحي
strong قوى	weak ضعيف
difficult صعب	easy سهل

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

gymnastics	a sport which has a lot of different skills, such as jumping	رياضة الجيمناز
gymnast	a person who does gymnastics	لاعب جيمناز
busy	spending a lot of time doing things	مشغول
train	practise a sport	يتدرب

II Reading and Listening

Reading

• on Lesson 6 SB page 10

Habiba Marzouk achieves⁽¹⁾ her dreams⁽²⁾

Habiba Marzouk is a **gymnast**⁽³⁾. She is 18 and lives in Cairo with her family.

Habiba has a very busy life. She goes to school and she studies hard. In the evenings, she **trains**⁽⁴⁾ for five or six hours. She is a top gymnast in **Africa**⁽⁵⁾ and she wants to go to **the Olympics**⁽⁶⁾.

Habiba's family always helps her. She eats **healthy**⁽⁷⁾ food so that she can stay strong. **Gymnastics**⁽⁸⁾ is a difficult sport but it makes her happy.



Check Vocabulary

رياضة الجيمناز (8) صحي (7) الألعاب الأولمبية (6) أفريقيا (5) يتدرب (4) لاعبة جيمناز (3) أطعم (2) يحقق / ينجح (1)

• on Lesson 6 WB page 77

My name is Omar. Nabila is my sister. She lives with me and my family in Damietta. Her favourite food is fish. I like cheese. We have the same hobbies. We like swimming ! We go swimming on Saturday and Sunday. My sister plays chess, too. I do not like chess. How old is Nabila ? She is 12. That is the same as me. I am 12, too.

• on Lesson 7 SB page 11

My name's Lamia. I'm nine years old. I *live* in Aswan with my family. My parents *are* teachers. My brother Ali *is* 13 years old and Khaled is nine. Khaled goes swimming every Friday.

I *listen* to music with *my* brothers. Ali *plays* football at school and he watches football matches on TV. Khaled *goes* swimming every Friday. There is a swimming pool near our house. My best friend is called Aya. We *play* basketball at school, and we're both in the school team. *Our* team is very good !

• on Lesson 7 WB page 78

Munir and Mustafa are twins. *Their* sister is called Radwa. *Her* hobby is tennis and she is my best friend. I live with *my* brother and *his* name is Sayed. *Our* house is in Cairo. What is *your* best friend's name ?



General Notes on Reading and Listening

1 busy

مزدحم - مشغول

ex.: - The classroom is **busy**. There are 70 students.

- The telephone line is **busy**.

- Habiba has a very **busy** life.

2 so that

لكي

المصدر. can + Inf. + فاعل + so that + جملة في زمن المضارع البسيط

ex.: - **SB** She eats healthy food **so that** she can stay strong.

3 gymnast - gymnastics

* gymnast

لاعب جمباز

ex.: - My friend is a famous gymnast.

* gymnastics

رياضة الجمباز (يأتي بعدها الفعل في صيغة المفرد)

ex.: - Gymnastics is a great sport.**4 make** مصدر الفعل + inf. مفعول

يجبر / يجعل

ex.: The teacher **made** Amal do her homework.

make مفعول + (adj) صفة

ex.: Playing football **makes** me happy.**5** لاحظ أن هذه الكلمات تنتهي بحرف (s) إلا أنها تتبع بفعل مفرد

physics / athletics / mathematics / gymnastics

ex.: - Gymnastics makes me fit.**6 list - menu**

* list

قائمة (أشياء مثل مشتريات)

- Mum gave me a **list** of things to buy from the supermarket.

* menu

قائمة (طعام في مطعم مثلاً)

- The waiter gave me the **menu** to choose from.**Important expressions & prepositions** تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

find it difficult about	يجد صعوبة بشأن	a description of	وصف لـ
move to	ينتقل إلى	stay strong	يظل قوياً
answer to	يجيب عن / إجابة لـ	in the evenings	في أوقات المساء
study hard	يذاكر بجد	in Africa	في قارة أفريقيا
train for + (مدة)	يتدرب لمدة	top gymnast	أفضل لاعب جمباز

Exercise on Vocabulary

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

➡ Key vocabulary

1. Athletes work hard to their school studies, their friends and families.

a. repeat

b. leave

c. balance

d. stay

2. The Egyptian football team hard to get a medal in the next Olympics.
a. rain b. train c. make d. stop
3. Mohammed Rashwan is a top athlete who won a silver medal in the in Los Angeles.
a. festival b. Olympics c. party d. physics
4. is a difficult sport, but it makes me fit.
a. Physics b. Mathematics c. Gymnastics d. Olympics
5. Sara is a She practises a lot to win a medal in her sport.
a. teacher b. doctor c. gymnast d. nurse

➔ SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

6. Good students work hard to their dreams. (Rafah - North Sinal 2020)
a. stay b. achieve c. start d. finish

7. **SB** Our science teacher made some to make the lesson easier. (Samalout - Minia 2020)
a. diagrams b. grams c. tea d. food

8. **WB** Nabila and Omar like They always go to the sea. (الامتحان مجمع الاسكندرية - المنشور ٢٠٢١)
a. printing b. swimming c. staying d. reading

9. **WB** A busy person is always (Belbis - Sharkia 2020)
a. talking b. walking
c. doing something d. going

➔ El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

10. How long will you in Egypt ?
- For 3 weeks.
a. carry b. stay c. know d. make
11. "....." is the opposite of "strong".
a. Weak b. Angry c. Funny d. Sunny
12. The policeman asked me to give a of the thief I saw.
a. question b. dream c. description d. balance

➔ Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. Mathematics a school subject.
a. are b. is c. have d. were

14. Habiba Marzouk is a gymnast in Africa.
 a. tape b. top c. pot d. bat
15. Gymnastics helps you to strong.
 a. spend b. find c. stay d. sleep
16. The coach the players train very hard to get ready for the league الدوري.
 a. caused b. made c. drove d. rode

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 6 SB page 10 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ١٥ ثم قم بالتدرب علي
 اجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions :

- **Critical thinking skill** مهارة التفكير النقدي

1. Why do you think Habiba has a busy life ?

I think because she goes to school, studies hard and trains for five or six hours a day.

- **Extracting information** استخراج المعلومات

2. Why does Habiba like gymnastics ?

- **Understanding reference** فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

3. What does the word "her" in the text refer to ?

2. Writing Corner

مهارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على كتابة مقرة إنشائية.

1. Habiba Marzouk is a top gymnast. ١. حبيبة مرزوق لاعبة جهاز على مستوى عال.
2. She is 18 and lives in Cairo. ٢. تبلغ من العمر ١٨ عام وتعيش في مدينة القاهرة.
3. She trains for about 6 hours a day. ٣. تتدرب لمدة حوالي ٦ ساعات في اليوم.
4. She eats healthy food to stay strong. ٤. تتناول أطعمة صحية لتظل قوية.

B. Building sentences

⊙ Read and complete :

me - for - can - is - on - in

1. Gymnastics _____ a difficult sport.
2. Sports make _____ feel happy.
3. Athletes eat healthy food so that they _____ be strong.
4. I go swimming _____ Fridays.
5. Habiba trains _____ five or six hours a day.

ملاحظة
بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات
اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين
قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

- Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"A famous sportswoman"

Writing tips

A paragraph is a group of related sentences that present one topic or one idea.

الموضوع الإنشائي هو عبارة عن مجموعة من الجمل المترابطة التي تعرض/تقدم موضوع واحد أو فكرة واحدة.

Punctuation marks :

علامات الترقيم :

1. Start each sentence with a capital letter. ١. ابدأ كل جملة بحرف كبير.
2. Use capital letters for : names, cities, days of the week, etc. ٢. استخدم الحروف الكبيرة مع : أسماء الأشخاص ، المدن ، أيام الأسبوع ، الخ.
3. End your sentence with a (.), (!) or (?). ٣. ضع :
أ. النقطة (.) في نهاية الجملة الخبرية.
ب. علامة التعجب (!) في نهاية الجملة التي تعبر عن الدهشة أو المفاجأة.
ج. علامة الاستفهام (?) في نهاية الجملة الاستفهامية.

3. Speaking Corner

محادثة التحدث

Asking and answering questions about a friend or a person

توجيه أسئلة وإجاباتها عن صديق أو شخص

Questions ?	Answers ✓
• What is his / her name ? ما اسمه أو اسمها ؟	- He / She is ... اسم الشخص ...
• How old is he / she ? ما عمره أو عمرها ؟	- He / She is ... السن أو العمر ... عمره / عمرها ...
• Where does he / she live ? أين يعيش أو تعيش ؟	- He / She lives in ... اسم المكان ... هو / هي تعيش في ...
• Who is his / her best friend ? من هو أفضل صديق له أو لها ؟	- His / Her best friend is ... أفضل صديق له / صديقة لها ...
• What is his / her favourite food ? ما هو الطعام المفضل له أو لها ؟	- His / Her favourite food is طعامه / طعامها المفضل
• What are his/ her hobbies ? ما هي هواياته أو هواياتها ؟	- His / Her hobbies are ... (الهوايات) ... هواياته أو هواياتها

Skills corner

★ **تدرب على المهارات طبقاً للورقة الامتحانية كل درس على حده :**

١ • **مهاراة القراءة :** تدرب على اسئلة قطعة الفهم (استخراج معلومات - اعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية - فهم ما يشير اليه الضمير - تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص - مهارة التفكير النقدي).

٢ • **مهارة الكتابة :** تدرب على كيفية الكتابة مع مراعاة (التنظيم - التهجى - ترابط الافكار - علامات الترقيم - القواعد اللغوية - اختيار المفردات اللغوية).

٣ • **مهارة التحدث :** تدرب على اثنان الوظائف اللغوية للتعامل مع سؤال المحادثة في الامتحان.

المعاصر في اللغة الانجليزية

امنح نفسك لمن يستحق



General Exercises

On

LESSONS

5 & 6

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (انصت للاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).



- Gymnastics is a/ an _____ sport.
a. easy b. difficult c. interesting d. boring
- The gymnast _____ for many hours daily.
a. waves b. tells c. keeps d. trains
- A gymnast must _____ his hobby, work and study.
a. train b. balance c. make d. charge
- The gymnast always wants to _____ his dream.
a. achieve b. study c. take d. goes

2 WB Complete the following dialogue :

Toka is telling Leen about her cousin, Fares.

Toka : This is a photo of my cousin.

Leen : What's his (1) _____ ?

Toka : It's Fares.

Leen : (2) _____ old is he ?

Toka : He's 14.

Leen : Where does he live ?

Toka : He lives (3) _____ Giza.

Leen : Which foods does he love ?

Toka : He (4) _____ fish with rice.

Leen : Me, (5) _____ .

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- I find it difficult to _____ to the city.
a. move b. write c. train d. achieve
- SB Habiba eats well because _____ is a difficult sport.
a. physics b. gymnastics c. mathematics d. Olympics

3. Let's go to the club to for the match.
a. sleep b. eat c. train d. drink
4. **SB** Habiba is a top in Africa.
a. gym b. gymnastics c. gymnast d. gymnastic
5. My is to be a doctor.
a. dream b. hobby c. party d. match
6. She goes to school and she hard.
a. studies b. study c. is studying d. studying
7. Athletics is a group of physical sports.
a. are b. is c. be d. being
8. **WB** Habiba is a great athlete. family lives in Cairo.
a. Her b. She c. Hers d. She's
9. How often do you sports ?
a. make b. do c. plan d. dive
10. "Busy" means a lot of time doing things.
a. doing b. making c. reading d. spending

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Seleem don't play tennis after school. (.....)
2. Mathematics are an interesting subject. (.....)
3. She is 18 and live in Cairo with her family. (.....)
4. What's their names ? (.....)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

محباب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"The best person in your family"

Test

on unit 1

يمكنك حل الاختبار
إلكترونياً وتصويبه

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (لنصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).



1. Habiba Marzouk lives in
a. Aswan b. Cairo c. Tanta d. Luxor
2. Habiba Marzouk wants to go to
a. China b. France c. the Olympics d. Italy
3. Habiba Marzouk is a top
a. gymnast b. basketball player
c. tennis player d. referee
4. Habiba Marzouk has a life. (Habiba - Sharikia 2020)
a. busy b. free c. sad d. angry

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

(Sharikia 2020)

Salma is asking Nada about her father.

Salma : What's your father's job ?

Nada : He is a (1)

Salma : A pilot ! (2) he like his job ?

Nada : Yes, he (3) it very much.

Salma : Where does he work ?

Nada : He works at Cairo (4)

Salma : How do you (5) your time ?

Nada : We sometimes play chess.

Salma : Wonderful !

Nada : Thanks.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

There are many young athletes in Egypt, who broke records الأرقام القياسية
In swimming, Farida Osman is known as "Egypt's Golden Fish" holds the
record and title لقب of the 50 - metre butterfly. She has already competed
نافس in two Olympics. Nour El Sherbini is the youngest woman to win

the Women's World Championship بطولة in squash. Alaa eldin Aboul Kassem was the first Olympic fencing رياضة المبارزة medal winner from an African country. He also competed at the 2016 Rio Olympics.

Sara Ahmed became the first woman from an Arab country to win an Olympic medal in weightlifting رفع الأثقال in the 2016 Rio Summer Olympics. Habiba Marzouk is a top **gymnast** in Africa.

All those athletes have a very busy life. They train very hard and study as well. They work hard to balance their studies or works, their sport and their friends and family.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the best title for the passage ?

2. Why do you think athletes have a busy life ?

3. How many athletes are mentioned in this passage ?

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined word "**gymnast**" means a person who _____.

- | | |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| a. plays football | b. plays tennis |
| c. plays basketball | d. does gymnastics |

5. The underlined pronoun "**She**" refers to _____.

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| a. Sara Ahmed | b. Farida Osman |
| c. Habiba Marzouk | d. Nour El Sherbini |

6. Nour El Sherbini is a _____ player.

- | | | | |
|------------------|-----------|---------------|-----------|
| a. weightlifting | b. squash | c. basketball | d. tennis |
|------------------|-----------|---------------|-----------|

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- They bought a new mobile for _____ father.
a. her b. their c. his d. Its
- I learn words by drawing simple _____.
a. drums b. dresses c. diagrams d. programmes

3. Sara always nice stories in the library.
a. reads b. read c. reading d. has read
4. All sportsmen dream of going to the
a. hospital b. Olympics c. school d. factory
5. Does she watch TV ? - No, she
a. don't b. does c. doesn't d. do
6. Hala has a very life. She goes to school and studies hard all time.
a. ugly b. free c. busy d. dirty
7. Playing chess is one of my favourite
a. subjects b. colours c. hobbies d. ideas
8. Doing this kind of sport me happy.
a. takes b. plays c. gives d. makes
9. Mohammed Salah became a footballer in England.
a. base b. middle c. bottom d. top
10. Her father and mother are alive, so she isn't an
a. orphan b. archeologist c. engineer d. Italian

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. **SB** Habiba eats healthy food so that she can stays strong. (.....)
2. **WB** Seleem doesn't plays tennis after school. (.....)
3. She loves his parents very much. (.....)
4. Does you have a new bag ? (.....)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on : **عبد حلي الهادي الكاتب** "A famous gymnast"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

UNIT 2

It's my favourite subject

SB pages 12-21 WB pages 79-85



Objectives

• Reading :

Descriptions of schools around the world

• Writing :

A paragraph about your journey to school;
A paragraph about your daily life

• Listening :

A discussion about timetables

• Speaking :

Asking and answering about school and timetable

• Language :

Adverbs of frequency; possessive 's and 's

• Life Skills :

Critical thinking; self-management

• العلامة 13 تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب
• العلامة 14 تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات

أسئلة
على وحدة تعلم

• دراسة المعاصر للمقارنة اليومية والبيانات في نهاية الكتاب
• ملحق (Master your term)

الأسئلة
المعاصرة



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

lesson (n)	حصة / درس	study (ied) (v) , (n)	يدرس / دراسة
computer studies (n)	مادة الحاسب الآلي	drama (n)	مادة الفن المسرحي
bell (n)	جرس	playground (n)	ملعب
library (n)	مكتبة (للقرأة والاستعارة)	art (n)	مادة التربية الفنية (الرسم)
timetable (n)	جدول مواعيد	typical (adj)	نمطي / نموذجي
social studies (n)	مادة الدراسات الاجتماعية	school hall (n)	قاعة / فناء المدرسة

تنويه ■ **Key Vocabulary** هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
 ■ **Master your Vocabulary** يقضي على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
 ■ **Glossary** لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 1

SB pages 12 & 13 WB page 79

travelling (n)	السفر / التنقل	quarter to	إلا ربع (للإخبار عن الوقت)
difference (n)	فرق / اختلاف	half (n)	نصف
quarter past	وربع (للإخبار عن الوقت)	break (n)	فسحة / راحة
language (n)	لغة	subject (n)	مادة دراسية

Lesson 2

SB pages 14 & 15 WB page 80

school days (n)	أيام الدراسة	trip (n)	رحلة قصيرة
road (n)	طريق	finally (adv)	أخيراً / في النهاية
head teacher (n)	ناظر المدرسة	Nairobi (n)	مدينة نيروبي
daily life (n)	الحياة اليومية	Kenya (n)	دولة كينيا

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المزارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
get up يستيقظ	got up	got up
mean يعني / يقصد	meant	meant
ring يرن / يتصل تليفونيًا	rang	rung

Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite العكس
usual مألوف / معتاد	unusual غير معتاد
start يبدأ	finish ينتهي

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

School subjects مواد دراسية	
Arabic	the main language of Arab people مادة اللغة العربية
art	painting and drawing مادة التربية الفنية (الرسم)
computer studies	the subject for learning how to use a computer مادة الحاسب الآلي
drama	the subject of how to learn about acting مادة الفن المسرحي
English	the language of England, the USA and many other countries مادة اللغة الإنجليزية
home economics	the subject for learning about cooking and skills for the home مادة الاقتصاد المنزلي
religion	the subject for learning about what people believe in مادة التربية الدينية
science	the subject for learning about how to test and understand facts. It includes biology, chemistry and physics مادة العلوم
social studies	the subject for studying people and how they live مادة الدراسات الاجتماعية
Other definitions تعريفات أخرى	
break	the time at school when you do not have lessons راحة / فُسحة
library	a place where you can borrow or read books مكتبة
playground	a place outside where children at school can play ملعب

bell	an object that makes a noise when you ring it	جرس
hall	a large room where people can meet together	قاعة / صالة
typical	means usual	نمطي

II Listening and Reading



Listening



• on Lesson 1 SB page 13

Amal : I like the new **timetable**⁽¹⁾. What's your favourite day, Injy ?

Injy : I like Thursday. We have **social studies**⁽²⁾ first on Thursday. Then we have English and then we go to **science**⁽³⁾. That's my favourite subject.

Amal : My favourite day's today. We have **maths**⁽⁴⁾ first and second lesson after break today. I love maths! Then we have science and **art**⁽⁵⁾.

Injy : I like art too, but I'm not very good at it. What do we have tomorrow ?

Amal : English, then **religion**⁽⁶⁾ is next, then Arabic and then **home economics**⁽⁷⁾. After **break**⁽⁸⁾, we have social studies. Then we have science and **computer studies**⁽⁹⁾. Finally, we have music.

Injy : When do we have **drama**⁽¹⁰⁾?

Amal : That's the last two lessons on a Tuesday and the last lesson Wednesday. It's time for the next lesson now ! See you later !

Check Vocabulary

(1) جدول مواعيد	(2) دراسات إجتماعية	(3) مادة العلوم	(4) مادة الرياضيات	(5) مادة التربية الفنية
(6) مادة التربية الدينية	(7) مادة الاقتصاد المنزلي	(8) فسحة / راحة	(9) مادة الحاسب الآلي	(10) مادة الفن المسرحي

• on Lesson 1 SB page 13

Say the times. Listen and check.

1. A quarter past ten.
2. Half past twelve.
3. Half past five.
4. Twenty-five past seven.
5. Five to twelve.
6. A quarter to nine.



Reading

• on Lesson 2 SB page 14

Daily life around the world

"I'm Akeyo. I live in Nairobi, in Kenya. This is a **typical**⁽¹⁾ day for me. On school days I get up at **half past**⁽²⁾ six. I usually have breakfast with my family. My school is **far away**⁽³⁾, so we never walk there. My mum and dad drive us there. It always takes a long time because the roads are busy. When we hear the bell at eight o'clock, we go to the school hall. We have four lessons, then it is break. I usually talk with my friends in the **playground**⁽⁴⁾, but sometimes we go to the **library**⁽⁵⁾ to read books. After break, we have more lessons. We have lunch at half past twelve. School finishes at four o'clock. When I get home, I have something to eat, then I always do my homework. My brother and I usually watch TV before we go to bed at about half past eight. I have a **busy day**!"⁽⁶⁾



Check Vocabulary

(1) نموذجي (2) نصف (3) بعيدة (4) ملعب (5) مكتبة (6) يوم مزدحم بالعمل



Videoscript

Lesson 2 SB page 14

Narrator : In Africa, America, Asia, and Europe, most children between the ages⁽¹⁾ of four and eighteen go to school. They often study subjects such as maths, Arabic and English. Students study in the morning and sometimes in the afternoon, too. Some children go to school from Sunday to Thursday. Other children go to school from Monday to Friday.

Check Vocabulary

(1) أعمار

When they finish school, some students choose to go to university. Some of the most important universities in Africa and the Arab region⁽²⁾ are in Egypt.

There is the Al-Azhar University⁽³⁾. This is one of the oldest universities in the world.

And there is Cairo University in Giza.

Here, people study subjects like art, science and computer studies.

Do you want to go to university ?

Which subjects do you want to study at university ?

Check Vocabulary

منطقة (2) جامعة الأزهر (3)



General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 Verb to have

المعاني المختلفة للفعل "have"

• يستخدم بمعنى لدى / عندي إذا كان بعده مادة دراسية.

ex.: - Today, I **have** two maths lessons.

• يستخدم بمعنى يمتلك إذا كان بعده اسم مملوك.

ex.: - Omar **has** a new car.

• يستخدم بمعنى يتناول إذا جاء بعدها طعام / شراب.

ex.: - I like to **have** lunch at home.

2 Collocations with verb "do"

أسماء متلازمة مع الفعل "do"

* do homework

يؤدي الواجب المنزلي

* do computer studies

يدرس الحاسب الآلي

* do the housework

يقوم بالأعمال المنزلية

3 by / on / in + means of transport وسائل المواصلات بعد حروف الجر

يستخدم حرف الجر "by" قبل كل وسائل المواصلات بشرط عدم وجود أداة أو أى كلمة أخرى قبلها

مثل "a - an - the - my" وإن وجدت كلمة أخرى يتغير حرف الجر إلى "on - in"

• لاحظ أنه يستخدم حرف الجر "in" قبل وسائل المواصلات الخاصة مثل "car - taxi - canoe".

ex.: - Toka goes to school **by** car / **in** a car.

- He goes to school **by** taxi / **in** a taxi.

• لاحظ أنه يستخدم حرف الجر "on" دائمًا قبل كلمة "foot" لتعني سيرًا على الأقدام وتأتي قبل وسائل المواصلات العامة مثل "bus - plane - train".

ex.: - He goes to school **on** foot = He walks to school.

- I go to work **by** bus / **on** a bus.

4 drive (someone) to a (place).

يوصل (شخص) لمكان بالسيارة

ex.:- Dad drives me to school.**5 home / there**

• لاحظ هاتان الكلمتان (home / there) لا تسبقان بحرف جر كما بالأمثلة.

ex.:- I get home at 7 p.m.

- She went there last week.

6 on / in / at + time

حروف الجر قبل الوقت

• on

يستخدم حرف الجر "on" قبل الأيام وتاريخ اليوم

- on Friday / Tuesday / Wednesday / Saturday

- on 15th August 2019

• in

يستخدم حرف الجر "in" مع الشهور والسنوات

- in (October / November / January)

- in (2018 / 1998 / 2003)

• at

يستخدم حرف الجر "at" قبل الساعة

- at seven o'clock.

- at quarter past ten

- at half past eleven / eleven thirty

7 a girl's school / a girls' school

• a girl's school

مدرسة تذهب إليها بنت

• a girls' school

مدرسة للبنات فقط

8

• لاحظ أن المواد الدراسية المنتهية بحرف "s" مثل

physics / mathematics / computer studies / home economics / social studies

تعامل معاملة الاسم المفرد ويستخدم معها فعل مفرد ولا يستخدم فعل جمع.

ex.:- Computer studies is my favourite subject.

- Maths has a lot of numbers.

9 The verb "get" with different meanings

لاحظ المعاني المختلفة للفعل "get"

ex.:- I get home at 3 : 15 p.m.

يصل إلى المنزل

- I get up at six o'clock in the morning.

يستيقظ

10 ring

يستخدم هذا الفعل بمعنى يرن / يتصل

ex.: - The school bell **rings** at 8 : 00 a.m.

يرن جرس المدرسة

- Rokaya can't **ring** me because she doesn't have my telephone number.

يجري مكالمة تليفونية

11 a.m. / p.m.

للتعبير عن فترات الليل والنهار (صباحاً / مساءً)

ex.: - I go to school at 7 : 00 a.m.

صباحاً

- I go to bed at 10 : 00 p.m.

بعد فترة الظهر أو فترة المساء

12 far away / far from

* far away

بعيد

ex.: - My house is far away.

* far from

بعيد عن ...

ex.: - My house is far from school.**13 a long / along**

* a long + اسم مفرد

(صفة) بمعنى طويل

ex.: - Engineers build a long road.

* ... along

(ظرف) بمعنى بامتداد

(walk - swim - run ...) و يسبق بأفعال مثل :

ex.: - I like walking along the river.**Important expressions & prepositions**

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

good **at** + (n. / inf. + ing)

جيد في

have a busy day

لديه يوم مزدحم بالعمل

on school days

في أيام الدراسة

take a long time

يستغرق وقتاً طويلاً

talk **to** / **with** ...

يتحدث إلى / مع ...

at break

في الفسحة

school starts **at** ...

تبدأ الدراسة في ...

help **in** the home

يساعد في المنزل

school finishes **at** ...

تنتهي الدراسة في ...

tell the time

يخبر بالوقت

typical day **for** me

يوم نمطي / نموذجي بالنسبة لي

on a typical weekend

في عطلة نهاية أسبوع نموذجية

It is time for (noun / inf. + ing) حان الوقت لـ ..	get home يصل للمنزل
What day is it today ? ما اليوم ؟	around the world دول العالم

Exercise on Vocabulary

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

➞ Key vocabulary

- We know it is time for the next lesson when we hear the school ringing.
a. ball b. bin c. bell d. mail
- You can know everything about countries, seas and rivers in
a. maths b. art c. social studies d. English
- All the children in our school go to the school when the head teacher wants to talk to us.
a. hall b. hole c. whole d. hell
- Some pupils study to make some shows.
a. social studies b. computer studies
c. science d. drama
- At break, I play games with my friends in the
a. bathroom b. playground c. laboratory d. classroom

➞ SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

- SB** is the subject of how to learn numbers. (El Fashn-Beni Suef 2020)
a. Drama b. Maths c. Arabic d. English
- WB** Dina swimming on Thursday and Saturday.
a. makes b. does c. goes d. feels
- WB** On a weekend, I visit my grandmother.
a. physical b. musical c. typical d. national
- Can I look at the to know the time of the English lesson ?
a. laboratory b. timetable c. toilet d. bell

(امتحان مجمع القليوبية - يناير ٢٠٢١)

(Mahalla-Gharbia 2020)

El-Moasser Exercises | تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

10. I go to school at quarter seven.

- a. too b. to c. two d. toe

11. How many lessons do students every day at school ?

- a. make b. give c. send d. have

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

12. Ahmed was born 18th June 1985.

- a. to b. in c. on d. at

13. When I home, I have my lunch.

- a. take b. give c. have d. get

14. Sara is good social studies.

- a. at b. in c. for d. to

15. Mona was late. She had to go to school a taxi.

- a. by b. on c. at d. in

16. My uncle me to school yesterday.

- a. made b. gave c. drove d. went

III Language

Adverbs of Frequency | ظروف التكرار



تستخدم ظروف التكرار مع زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عدد مرات تكرار فعل ما :

ex. - I **always** get up early.

ظروف التكرار تأتي قبل الفعل الأساسي وبعد (verb to be) :

ex. - We **usually** go out on Fridays. - We **are never** late for school.

كم مرة... ؟ ؟ **inf.** + **subj.** + **(do / does)** + **How often**

مصدر الفعل الفاعل

تستخدم للسؤال عن عدد المرات التي يتكرر فيها فعل ما وللإجابة نستخدم ظروف التكرار :

always - sometimes - usually - often - never

ex. - How often do you walk to school ?

* I **never** walk to school.

- How often does he do his homework in the evening ?

* He **always** does his homework in the evening.

يمكن الإجابة على السؤال بعدد مرات حدوث الفعل -

- How often do you go to the club ?

* I go to the club **twice a week**.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

👉 SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. **WB** We speak English during our English lessons.
a. not b. yet c. always d. ever

2. **WB** We go to the beach in winter. It's too cold to swim.

a. never b. always c. usually d. sometimes

3. **SB** How do you get up at 6.30 a.m ? - Always.

a. many b. long c. much d. often

4. We go to school on Fridays.

a. always b. often c. never d. usually

5. Which lesson after home economics on Sunday ?

a. will b. has c. does d. is

👉 El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. I have breakfast at seven o'clock every morning. This means I
have breakfast at 7 in the morning.

a. always b. sometimes c. often d. never

7. My father _____ to work by car.
a. usually goes b. goes usually c. go never d. never go
8. Mrs Mervat _____ goes to work early. She never comes late.
a. never b. ever c. always d. sometimes
9. Ashraf does not like flying. This means he _____ travels by plane.
a. always b. never c. sometimes d. often
10. Salma gets ten out of ten. She _____ studies her lessons very well.
a. never b. sometimes c. always d. ever

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

- SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة
1. Dina always goes swimming. She goes swimming on Thursday and Saturday. (Basha - Qafvoubia 2020) (_____)
2. 50 We both get up in half past six. (_____)
3. My father travels always by plane. (Wasut Alexandria 2020) (_____)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

4. I usually helps in the home. (_____)
5. Sara and Mona always are happy. (_____)
6. He eats never unhealthy food. (_____)
7. When do you eat vegetables ? - Twice a day. (_____)

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 2 SB page 14 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ٧٢ ثم قم بالتدرب على اجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

A. Answer the following questions :

- Giving the main idea إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

- Daily life around the world.

- Extracting information استخراج المعلومات

2. What do Akeyo and her friends do at break ?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- **Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context** تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص

3. The word "typical" in the text means

a. unusual

b. safe

c. usual

d. unknown

2. Writing Corner

مهاراة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على كتابة مقرة إنشائية.

1. I usually get up at 6 : 30 a.m and have breakfast with my family.

١. استيقظ عادة في تمام السادسة والنصف صباحًا وأتناول وجبة الإفطار مع أسرتي.

2. I go to school by car as it's far away.

٢. أذهب إلى المدرسة بالسيارة لأنها بعيدة.

3. I have lunch at four o'clock.

٣. أتناول وجبة الغداء في تمام الرابعة.

4. I never watch TV in the evening.

٤. لا أشاهد التلفزيون أبدًا في المساء.

B. Building sentences

⊙ **Read and complete :**

lives – usually – live – I – drives – me

1. I in Nasr City, in Cairo.

2. This is a typical day for

3. On school days, get up at 6 : 30 a.m.

4. I have breakfast with my family.

5. My dad me to school every day.

للموه

بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات
اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين
قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة مقرة إنشائية.

- Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"Your daily life"

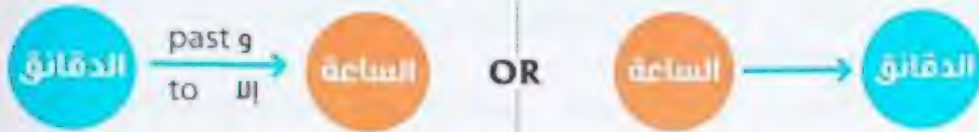
3. Speaking Corner

ممارسة التحدث

Telling the time

الإخبار بالوقت

There are two ways of telling the time : هناك طريقتان للإخبار عن الوقت :



9:15 : a quarter past nine → nine fifteen



10:45 : a quarter to eleven → ten forty-five



11:05 : five past eleven → eleven five



11:30 : half past eleven → eleven thirty



12:50 : ten to one → twelve fifty



Note : 15 minutes = a quarter of an hour 30 minutes = a half of an hour

Exam Language Bank

أهم النقاط (موضوع اختبار) في كل وحدة والتي تستطيع من خلالها التعامل مع اختبار الوحدة وكل الاختبارات الخاصة بالمنهج.



General Exercises

On

LESSONS **1 & 2**

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Heidi and Nada are talking about school timetable.

Heidi : What's your favourite subject ?

Nada : I (1) maths. And you ?

Heidi : Social studies.

Nada : Do we (2) an English lesson tomorrow ?

Heidi : Yes. It's after science. What (3) does it start ?

Nada : (4) 10 o'clock.

Heidi : What's your favourite day ?

Nada : My favourite day (5) today, we have maths and P.E.

Heidi : I love P.E. lessons.

Nada : Wonderful !

2 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Othmano lives in Rowanda. This is a typical day for him. On school days, Othmano gets up at half past six. He usually has breakfast with his family. His school is far away, so he takes the school bus at five to seven. He arrives at school at quarter past seven. The school bell rings at eight o'clock and the pupils go to the school hall. Othmano has four lessons before the break. At break he talks to his friends and plays in the playground. He has more lessons after break. He has lunch at 12:30. The school day finishes at 3:00. He arrives home at 3:30.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.

2. Why does Othmano take the bus to school ?

3. Do you think Othmano's typical day is good or bad ?

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined word "break" has the same meaning as
a. work b. rest c. fun d. lunch

5. The school rings at 8 o'clock.
a. pin b. bell c. bill d. bin

6. The underlined pronoun "he" refers to
 a. Othmano b. Adel c. Othmano's friend d. Samy

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Do you often your friends ?
 a. visits b. visit c. to visit d. visiting
2. **SB** Arabic is the main of Arab countries.
 a. subject b. sport c. language d. hobby
3. A plane fast.
 a. always is b. is always c. never is d. is never
4. is the time when you don't have lessons.
 a. Brake b. Book c. Break d. Bike
5. do you get up early on holiday ? - Never.
 a. What time b. When c. How often d. How old
6. Yesterday was a/an day for me. It was the same as every day.
 a. ugly b. typical c. free d. type
7. We learn about acting in
 a. drama b. science c. maths d. Arabic
8. **SB** What does school start ? - At 8 a.m.
 a. school b. time c. class d. lesson
9. The subject for learning about cooking and skills for the home is called
 a. home economics b. science
 c. drama d. computer studies
10. The rings at the end of each lesson at school.
 a. bill b. bell c. ball d. pill

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Faten sometimes read English books. (.....)
2. How many do you watch TV ? - Sometimes. (.....)
3. He does usually exercises on Friday. (.....)
4. They play in the club every day. They never go to the club. (.....)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"Your favourite subject"

موضوعي المفضل في الدراسة



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

school uniform (n)	زي مدرسي	culture (n)	ثقافة
school rules (n)	القواعد المدرسية	way (n)	طريقة / وسيلة
school objects (n)	أدوات مدرسية	rain (ed) (v), (n)	تمطر / مطر
cycle (d) (v)	يقود (دراجة)	snowmobile (n)	دراجة جليدية
follow (ed) (v)	يتبع	canoe (d) (v), (n)	يحدف / قارب طويل ضيق

- لتوبه** • **Key Vocabulary** هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
 • **Master your Vocabulary** يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
 • **Glossary** لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 3

SB pages 16 & 17 WB page 81

football shirt (n)	قميص كرة القدم	teachers' room (n)	حجرة المدرسين
pencil case (n)	مقلمة	motorbike (n)	دراجة بخارية
office (n)	مكتب	towel (n)	منشفة / فوطة

Lesson 4

SB page 18 WB page 82

forms (n)	أشكال / أنماط	village (n)	قرية
transport (n)	النقل والمواصلات	journey (n)	رحلة طويلة
travel (led) (v)	يسافر	Lake Bunyonyi	بحيرة بونيوني
again (adv)	مرة ثانية	Uganda (n)	دولة أوغندا

forms of transport

أنماط / أشكال المواصلات

animal	حيوان	in a city	في المدينة	on water	على الماء	in the air	في الجو
camel	جمل	car / taxi	سيارة / تاكسي	boat	قارب	plane	طائرة

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
wear يرتدي	wore	worn
forget ينسى	forgot	forgotten

Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite العكس
kind طيب / عطوف	unkind قاسي / غير طيب
outside خارج	inside داخل
dangerous خطير	safe آمن
forget ينسى	remember يتذكر

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

canoe	a small, narrow boat for one or two people	قارب طويل ضيق
cycle	ride a bicycle	يركب دراجة
snowmobile	a vehicle that you can drive on snow	دراجة جليدية
Uganda	a country in central Africa	دولة أوغندا

II Listening and Reading



Listening



• on Lesson 3 WB page 81

Fatma : Hi Mariam. Is this Malak's pen ?

Mariam : No, that's Judy's pen. She always uses that pen.

Fatma : OK. Whose bag is this ?

Mariam : That's Huda's bag.

Fatma : No, it's not Huda's bag. Her bag is red. This bag is blue.

Mariam : Oh, OK. Then it's Malak's bag.

Fatma : There's a book on the desk. Is that your book ?

Mariam : No, it's the teachers' book. All the teachers use that book.

Fatma : Ah, I know whose ruler this is. It has Dalia and Azza's names on it.

• on Lesson 4 SB page 18

Narrator 2 : 1

Narrator : Every morning, children from this village⁽¹⁾ in Egypt cycle⁽²⁾ to school. It is a cheap⁽³⁾ and healthy⁽⁴⁾ way⁽⁵⁾ to travel.

Boy : When the roads are busy, the bus is slow but the bike is quick⁽⁶⁾!

Narrator 2 : 2

Narrator : These children live next to Lake⁽⁷⁾ Bunyonyi in Uganda⁽⁸⁾. Their school is on the other side⁽⁹⁾ of the lake, so they do not walk to school. They go in a canoe⁽¹⁰⁾. The canoe takes the children to school and home again every day.

Boy : Sometimes, when it rains⁽¹¹⁾ a lot, the water's dangerous and we can't go to school that day.

Narrator 2 : 3

Narrator : This boy lives in the USA. In winter, there is a lot of snow⁽¹²⁾. The children travel to school on a snowmobile⁽¹³⁾!

Boy : It's cold, but it's fast - and fun !

Check Vocabulary

(1) قرية	(2) يركب دراجة	(3) رخيص	(4) صحي	(5) طريقة	(6) سريع	(7) بحيرة
(8) دولة أوغندا	(9) الجانب الآخر	(10) قارب طويل ضيق	(11) تمطر	(12) جليد	(13) مركبة للتنقل فوق الجليد	

Reading

• on Lesson 4 SB page 18

How do they go to school ?

- In some countries, children live a long way from their school. They do not go to school by car, bus or train.
- 1. Every morning, children from this village in Egypt cycle to school. It is a cheap and healthy way to travel. They can always arrive on time.
- 2. These children live next to Lake Bunyonyi, in Uganda. Their school is on the other side of the lake, so they do not walk to school. They go in a canoe. The canoe takes the children to school and home again every day.



3. This boy lives in the USA. In winter, there is a lot of snow. The children travel to school on a snowmobile !



General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 الأسماء المنتهية بحرف (y) قبله حرف ساكن. يتم حذف حرف (y) ويضاف (ies) في نهاية الاسم عند الجمع.

* a hobby → hobbies

* a country → countries

* أما إذا كان الاسم ينتهي بحرف (y) قبله حرف متحرك (a / e / i / o / u) لا يتم حذف (y) ويضاف (s) في نهاية الاسم عند الجمع.

* a boy → boys

* a toy → toys

2 on time / in time

* on time

في الوقت المحدد

ex.: - Good students arrive at school on time.

* in time

في الوقت المناسب (قبل الوقت المحدد قليلاً)

ex.: - Ali saved the young boy in time.

3 أفعال تعبر عن طريقة السفر أو وسيلة المواصلات

* He cycles to school.

(by bicycle / bike)

* Bassem always drives to work.

(by car)

* We often walk to school.

(on foot)

* Rahma usually flies to Hurghada.

(by plane)

* Tourists sailed to Alexandria.

(by boat)

4 by canoe = in a canoe

بالقارب (الضيّق الطويل)

ex.: - The children go to school in a canoe (by canoe).

5 take + وقت + to + inf. المصدر

يستغرق

ex.: - How long does it take to go to Benha ?

- It takes 30 minutes to go to Benha.

Important expressions & prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

on the right	على جهة اليمين	on the timetable	في جدول المواعيد
on the other side of	على الجانب الآخر من	work in groups	يعمل في مجموعات
take a difficult journey to	يقوم برحلة صعبة لـ ...	help each other	يساعد كلًا من الآخر
take the same time	يستغرق نفس الوقت	take (a person) to (a place)	ياخذ شخص لمكان
say unkind things	يقول أشياء غير طيبة	travel on a snowmobile	يسافر / ينتقل في دراجة جليدية
follow school rules	يتبع القواعد المدرسية	walk along	يمشي بطول / باستقامة
live a long way from	يعيش بعيدًا عن	important to	هام لـ

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

- A is used to move and travel on ice.
a. mobile b. kite c. plane d. snowmobile
- The school should be followed in different schools.
a. roles b. rulers c. rules d. rows
- Pens, notebooks and books are school
a. uniforms b. rules c. objects d. subjects
- Some children in Egypt to school.
a. recycle b. cycle c. swim d. circle

SB , WB and Previous Exams

- SB Sometimes, when it a lot, the water is dangerous and we can't arrive at school on time.
a. trains b. reads c. rains d. runs
- My school is a white shirt and blue pants.
a. rule b. uniform c. form d. picture
- SB We never unkind things to other students.

a. tell b. say c. speak d. see

- WB Some children in Uganda go to school in a

a. canoe b. plane c. rocket d. mobile

9. _____ Nasser in Aswan is full of many kinds of fish.

(Aswan 2020)

- a. River b. Lake c. Sea d. Mountain

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

10. Buses, cars, trains and motorbikes are forms of _____.

- a. clothes b. transport c. subjects d. energy

11. Put all your pens in your pencil _____.

- a. sharpener b. desk c. board d. case

12. You can know a lot about different _____ of countries using the internet.

- a. cultures b. babies c. toilets d. rooms

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. How long does it _____ to finish your work ?

- a. give b. have c. take d. talk

14. By cycling to school, students can always arrive _____ time.

- a. into b. on c. from d. about

15. In some cities, children live a long _____ from their schools.

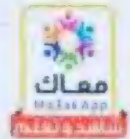
- a. way b. weight c. height d. length

16. Teachers should help children to work _____ groups.

- a. in b. from c. at d. about

III Language

Possessive ('s) الملكية ('s)



تستخدم ('s) الملكية في الحالات الآتية :

١ تستخدم عادة مع الأسماء المفردة من الكائنات الحية (الأشخاص - الحيوانات).

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| ex. - a boy's name اسم ولد | - a king's palace قصر ملك |
| - a spider's web شبكة عنكبوت | - Sara's book كتاب سارة |
| - a dog's tail ذيل كلب | - a doctor's appointment موعد الدكتور |

٢ تستخدم ('s) مع الأسماء الجمع غير المنتظمة (غير المنتهية ب-s).

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| ex. - men's coats معاطف الرجال | - women's bags حقائب السيدات |
| - children's clothes ملابس أطفال | |

تستخدم (s) مع الوظائف للإشارة لمكان العمل.

- ex. - the butcher's محل الجزار - the chemist's الصيدلية
- the baker's المخبز - the grocer's محل البقالة

تستخدم (s) مع الأسماء الجمع المنتظمة المنتهية بـ (-s) من الكائنات الحية (الأشخاص -

الحيوانات). ولكن بوضع الفاصلة العليا (') فقط بعد (s).

- ex. - The boys' house منزل الأولاد - horses' legs أرجل الخيول

تستخدم (s) أو (s') مع التعبيرات التي تدل على الوقت.

- ex. - a week's holiday إجازة لمدة أسبوع - ten minutes' break استراحة لمدة عشر دقائق
- tomorrow's weather طقس الغد - two days' work يومان عمل

تستخدم (s) أو (') فقط مع الأسماء المفردة المنتهية بـ (-s)

- ex. - Mr Jones's house or Mr Jones' house.

تستخدم (s) بعد الاسم الأخير في حالة امتلاك شخصين أو أكثر لنشي ما.

- ex. - **WB** Can you see Kamal and Amir's classroom ?

لا تستخدم (s) مع أسماء الجماد.

- ex. - exercise book كتاب تدريبات - ink pen قلم حبر
- computer screen شاشة كمبيوتر - table leg رجل المنضدة

يمكن استخدام (belong to) بدلاً من (s) الملكية للتعبير عن الملكية.

- ex. - This is Sama's dress. = This dress belongs to Sama.

Multiple choice notes

ملاحظات لسؤال الاختيار من متعدد

- Room one is the room. They are holding a meeting.
a. teacher b. teachers c. teacher's d. teachers'
تم اختيار (teachers') لأن المقصود غرفة المعلمين جميعاً.
- Room one is the room. His name is Mr Sakr,
a. teacher b. teachers c. teacher's d. teachers'
تم اختيار (teacher's) لأن المقصود غرفة الأستاذ صقر فقط.
- This is the
a. school gate b. school's gate c. schools' gate d. schools gate
تم اختيار (school gate) لأن (s) لا تستخدم مع أسماء الجماد.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. book is it ? - It's Ali's. (El Fashn-Beni Suef 2020)

- a. Who b. Whose c. Whom d. When

2. SB The are Judy and Ola. (امتحان مجمع سراج - البليدا ٢٠٢١)

- a. girls names b. girls' names c. girl's names d. girl names

3. SB This is the They are talking about English.

(امتحان مجمع الغربية - شرق طنطا ٢٠٢١)

- a. teacher room b. teacher's room
c. teachers' room d. teachers room

4. This bag is (El Saf-Giza 2020)

- a. Lama's b. Lama's sister c. Lama d. Lama's sisters

5. WB These are my jackets. They go to the same school.

- a. brother b. brothers c. brother's d. brothers'

6. SB They are not the notebooks.

- a. children b. childs' c. children's d. childrens'

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. This mobile belongs to

- a. Charles's b. Charles' c. a, b d. Charles

8. The tail is black.

- a. cat b. cat's c. cats' d. cats

9. We will meet at six in the

- a. car park b. car's park c. cars' park d. car park's

10. Whose bag is this ? - It is

- a. Dina b. Dina's c. Dinas' d. Dinas

11. This car belongs Omar.

- a. on b. to c. of d. for

12. He bought a new

- a. computer's screen b. computers' screen
c. computer screen d. computers screen

13. This is the gate.
a. house b. house's c. houses d. houses'

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

→ SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. **WB** This is Alis phone. It's new. (Kotouh-Gharbia 2020) (.....)
2. **SB** The girl name is Lama. (Samaloni-Minia 2020) (.....)
3. **SB** When shoes are these ? - They are Ali's. (.....)
4. **WB** My sister goes to a girl's school. (.....)
5. It's Dalia's and Azza ruler. (.....)

→ El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. This is Halas' website. (.....)
7. We buy medicine at the chemist. (.....)

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 4 SB page 18 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ٨٦ ثم قم بالتدرب على اجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

A. Answer the following questions :

- **Extracting information** إستخراج المعلومات

1. How many forms of transport are there in this passage ?
- There are three (bike, canoe, snowmobile).

- **Critical thinking skill** مهارة التفكير النقدي

2. Why do you think the children in Egypt cycle to school ?
.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- **Understanding reference** فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

3. The pronoun "**Their**" in the text refers to children from
a. Egypt b. Uganda c. England d. the USA

2. Writing Corner

مهارات الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

1. Some children live a long way from their schools.
١. بعض الأطفال يعيشون بعيداً عن مدارسهم.
2. Some of them have to cross lakes by using a canoe.
٢. بعضهم يضطر لعبور بحيرات باستخدام قارب صغير.
3. Other children can't go to school because of heavy snow.
٣. أطفال آخرون لا يستطيعون الذهاب إلى المدرسة بسبب الثلج الغزير.
4. They usually use a snowmobile to get to their schools.
٤. وهم عادة ما يستخدموا مركبة الثلج فوق الجليد للوصول لمدارسهم.

B. Building sentences

⊙ Read and complete :

rains – in – on – cycles – is – cycle

1. Every morning, some children to school in Egypt.
2. It cheap and healthy to cycle to school.
3. In Uganda, they go to school a canoe.
4. In the USA, children travel to school a snowmobile.
5. When it a lot, we can't go to school that day.

تلميح

بعد دراسة الفواعل والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

- Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"A journey to school in some countries"

3. Speaking Corner

مهارات التحدث

Asking and answering about school

السؤال والإجابة عن المدرسة

Questions ?

Answers ✓

A : How do you travel to school ?

كيف تذهب إلى المدرسة ؟

B : I travel to school by bus.

أذهب إلى المدرسة بالتوبيس.

A : How long does it take ?

كم المدة التي تستغرقها الرحلة ؟

B : It takes 15 minutes.

تستغرق الرحلة ١٥ دقيقة.

General Exercises

On

LESSONS

3 & 4



• Understand

• Apply

• Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. My school is from my house.
a. near b. far c. easy d. long
2. I to school every morning.
a. recycle b. cycle c. drive d. take
3. I at my school on time.
a. drive b. arrive c. walk d. talk
4. It's to go to school by bike.
a. unhealthy b. bad c. good d. healthy

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. That red car in the street is
a. car Tom b. Toms car c. Tom car d. Tom's car
2. Mrs Mona is
a. Saras mother b. mother Sara
c. Sara's mother d. mother's Sara
3. We always to the teacher carefully.
a. help b. do c. forget d. listen
4. A canoe is one of the forms of
a. journey b. snowmobile c. transport d. rule
5. The man washed the
a. doctor car b. doctor's car c. car doctor d. car's doctor
6. "....." is the opposite of "safe".
a. Expensive b. Dangerous c. Exciting d. Weak
7. We shouldn't our school objects.
a. remember b. forget c. listen d. talk



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

project (n)	مشروع	shower (n)	دش / استحمام
dinner (n)	وجبة العشاء	grade (n)	صف دراسي
hobbies (n)	هوايات	put on (phr.v)	يرتدي

تنويه ▪ **Key Vocabulary** هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
 ▪ **Master your Vocabulary** يقضي على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
 ▪ **Glossary** لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 5

SB page 19 WB page 83

French (n) (adj)	اللغة الفرنسية / فرنسي (الجنسية)	quite (adj)	إلى حد ما
------------------	----------------------------------	-------------	-----------

Lesson 6

SB page 20 WB page 84

preparatory	إعدادي / المرحلة الإعدادية	separate (d) (v)	يفصل
message (n)	رسالة	reply (ied) (v), (n)	يرد - رد
items (n)	أشياء / أصناف	flag (n)	علم

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
wake up يستيقظ	woke up	woken up

Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite العكس
put on يرتدي	take off يخلع ملابسه
come يأتي	leave يغادر
correct صحيح	incorrect غير صحيح
friendly ودود	unfriendly غير ودود

II Listening and Reading

Listening

• on Lesson 5 SB page 19



- Leila : There's the bell⁽¹⁾ !
- Aya : What subject have we got next ?
- Leila : Let's look at the timetable⁽²⁾. We've got computer studies next, in the hall. Hooray !
- Aya : Computer studies ... I'm not very good at computer studies !
- Leila : I love it ! It's my favourite ! What's your favourite subject, Aya ?
- Aya : I like science and languages.
- Leila : Are you good at languages ?
- Aya : I'm quite good at English, and I'm not bad at French.
- Leila : Who's our English teacher this year ?
- Aya : It's Mrs Amal.
- Leila : Oh good. She's really friendly⁽³⁾. When have we got English ?
- Aya : It's after break⁽⁴⁾.
- Leila : What time is break ?
- Aya : It's from quarter past ten to half past ten. Let's meet in the playground⁽⁵⁾ and go to the library.
- Leila : OK !



Check Vocabulary

(1) جرس (2) جدول الحصص / المواعيد (3) ودود (4) راحة / قسدة (5) ملعب

Reading

• on Lesson 5 WB page 83

- Hatem : What's your favourite subject, Hazem ?
- Hazem : I like English.
- Hatem : Who's our English teacher this year ?

Hazem : It's Mrs Eman.

Hatem : She's a good teacher. And when have we got English ?

Hazem : We have it today, after break. Then we have maths.

Hatem : Good, I like maths. Are you good at maths ?

Hazem : I'm quite good at maths. I'm not bad at science, too.

Hatem : Yes, you're good at science. What time is break ?

Hazem : Now. Let's go to the playground.

on Lesson 6 SB page 20

A Day in MY Life !

Amira is from Egypt.

Q : How old are you, and where are you from ?

A : I'm twelve years old, and I'm from **Hurghada**⁽¹⁾.

Q : What subjects do you like ?

A : This year, I'm in **preparatory**⁽²⁾ 1 at school. My **favourite**⁽³⁾ subjects are science, **computer studies**⁽⁴⁾ and maths. We have science and maths in the first lesson every day, but we only have computer studies on Wednesday. I like music, **too**⁽⁵⁾, but I'm not very good at it !

Q : What do you usually do after school ?

A : I sometimes read or watch TV. I always do my **homework**⁽⁶⁾ before I have **dinner**⁽⁷⁾. After dinner, I usually have a **shower**⁽⁸⁾ and read my book in bed. What time do you **wake up**⁽⁹⁾ and go to bed ?



Check Vocabulary

(1) مدينة الهرقية (2) المرحلة الإعدادية (3) مفضل (4) مادة الحاسب الآلي (5) أيضًا (6) واجب منزلي (7) وجبة العشاء (8) دش (9) يستيقظ

on Lesson 6 WB page 84

Hi Nagwa

How are you ? You want to know what my parents do at the weekend. My father works with computers. My mother is a teacher. My dad never works at the weekend, but sometimes my mum looks at students' homework! We often go shopping. When it is not very hot, we usually go to the park.



My brother always plays football when we go there! He is very good at football. What about you ? What do you do at the weekend ?

Best wishes

Nesma



General Notes on Reading & Listening

- 1 very - quite** تستخدم هذه الظروف في تقوية معنى الصفة وتأتي غالبًا قبل الصفات.
- * I am good at maths. جيد في
 - * I am quite good at maths. جيد إلى حد ما
 - * I am very good at maths. جيد جدًا
 - * I am not good at maths. ليس جيد

- 2 good for / good at**
- * good for مفيد لـ / جيد لـ
ex.: - Milk is good for our bones عظام.
 - * good at (inf. + ing) / noun اسم جيد في
ex.: - She is good at English / reading English.

- 3 What about you ?** وماذا عنك ؟
يستخدم هذا التعبير في المحادثات عند الاستفسار عن شيء يخص المخاطب.
- A : What's your favourite subject ?
B : I like science. What about you ?
A : I like science, too.

- 4 quiet - quite**
- * quiet = calm صفة بمعنى (هادئ)
 - ex.: - The village is quiet.
 - * quite + ظرف / صفة إلى حد ما
ex.: - He is quite good at maths.
- He runs quite quickly.

- 5 too - either**
- * too تستخدم (too) بمعنى أيضًا وتأتي في نهاية الجملة المثبتة.
ex.: - I like music, too.
 - * either تستخدم (either) بمعنى أيضًا وتأتي في نهاية الجملة المنفية.
ex.: - I don't like music, either.

Important expressions & prepositions

through the internet	من خلال الإنترنت	talk on the bus	يتحدث في الأتوبيس
go shopping	يذهب للتسوق	from another country	من دولة أخرى
at the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	come home from school	يعود للمنزل من المدرسة
have a shower	يستخدم	end with	ينتهي بـ
Hooray = Hurray	تستخدم للتعبير عن الفرح والبهجة	send through	يرسل خلال
best wishes	أطيب التمنيات	work with computer	يتعامل مع الحاسب الآلي

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

- I usually have a in the morning.
a. shore b. sure c. share d. shower
- Breakfast, lunch and are meals.
a. dinner b. language c. petrol d. reading
- Our English teacher always asks us to do
a. beds b. projects c. showers d. photos

SB, WB and Previous Exams

- WB An email is a simple sent through the internet.
a. project b. card c. message d. calendar
- SB Taking is the favourite hobby for some tourists. They have modern cameras.
a. showers b. photos c. rest d. sandwiches
- WB We often shopping at the weekend.
a. go b. do c. give d. lead
- My brother is short for a basketball player.
a. quiet b. quit c. quite d. quote

El-Moasser Exercises

- We all like Dr Amir because he is kind and
a. unkind b. friendly c. impatient d. greedy

9. Pupils in my school must on their school uniform every day.
a. take b. put c. make d. talk
10. Look at the We have a science lesson at 10:00 a.m.
a. date b. calendar c. timetable d. article
11. He is 14 years old, so he goes to a school.
a. preparatory b. primary c. kindergarten d. secondary
12. What are you in ? - I'm in preparatory one.
a. age b. grade c. colour d. school

➔ Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. He works computers. He is a computer engineer.
a. for b. on c. with d. from
14. I usually finish an email with
a. Hi b. Hello c. Dear d. Best wishes
15. People who come China are Chinese.
a. to b. in c. from d. about
16. I like music, but I'm not very good it.
a. for b. on c. in d. at

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 6 WB page 84 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ٩٨ ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

A. Answer the following questions :

- **Critical thinking skill** مهارة التفكير النقدي

1. Why do you think Nesma's father doesn't work at the weekend ?

I think because it is a holiday.

- **Extracting information** إستخراج المعلومات

2. Where do they usually go when it is not very hot ?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- **Understanding reference** فهم ما يشير إليه ضمير

3. The pronoun "He" in the text refers to
- Nesma's father
 - Nesma's cousin
 - Nesma's uncle
 - Nesma's brother

2. Writing Corner

ممارسة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

أكمل لتساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

- My favourite subjects are science and maths.
1. المواد المفضلة لدى هي العلوم والرياضيات.
- Music is my favourite hobby.
2. الموسيقى هي هوايتي المفضلة.
- I always do my homework before I have dinner.
3. دائماً ما أنتهي من واجباتي قبل تناول وجبة العشاء.

B. Building sentences

⊙ Read and complete :

after - quite - lesson - quiet - am - too

- This year, I in preparatory one.
- We have maths in the first
- I like music, but I'm not very good at it.
- I'm good at maths.
- We have science today break.

نصائح

بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات
اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين
قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

أدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

- Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"Your favourite subjects"

Punctuation

علامات الترقيم

1 full stop (.)

ex.: - I'm in grade one at school.

تستخدم في نهاية الجملة الخبرية.

2 question mark (?)

ex.: - What subjects do you like ?
- Is it your book ?

تستخدم في نهاية السؤال.

3 Comma (,)

تستخدم للفصل بين الأشياء في قائمة.

ex.: - My favourite subjects are science , computer studies and maths.**4 Apostrophe (')**

- تستخدم في حالة الملكية.

ex.: - Amira's family is from Hurghada.

- Pupils' books are over there.

- تستخدم في الاختصارات.

ex.: - I'm very good at English.

- He's my teacher.

3. Speaking Corner

مهارات التحدث

Asking and answering questions about school and timetable.

السؤال عن المدرسة والجدول المدرسي والإجابة عليهم.

Questions ?	Answers ✓
• What subjects have we got today ? ما المواد الدراسية التي ندرسها اليوم ؟	- We have computer studies and science. سندرس مادة الحاسب الآلي والعلوم.
• What is your favourite subject ? ما هي المادة المفضلة بالنسبة لك ؟	- I like science. أحب مادة العلوم.
• Are you good at languages ? هل أنت جيد في اللغات ؟	- I'm quite good at English, and I'm not bad at French. إلى حد ما أنا جيد في اللغة الإنجليزية ولست سيئاً في مادة اللغة الفرنسية.
• Who is our English teacher this year ? من هو مدرسنا لمادة اللغة الإنجليزية هذا العام ؟	- It is Mrs Amal. إنها الأستاذة أمل.
• When have we got English ? متى ندرس مادة اللغة الإنجليزية ؟	- It is after break. بعد فترة الاستراحة (الفسحة).
• What time is the break ? ما وقت فترة الاستراحة (الفسحة) ؟	- It is from quarter past ten to half past ten. إنها من الساعة العاشرة والرربع حتى الساعة العاشرة والنصف.

General Exercises

on

LESSONS

5 & 6

• Understand

• Apply

• Create



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. How old is Amira ? - She is
 a. 13 b. 14 c. 12 d. 16
2. Where is she from ?
 a. Cairo b. Hurghada c. Luxor d. Giza
3. Amira is in one at school.
 a. kindergarten b. primary c. secondary d. preparatory
4. She likes
 a. English b. maths
 c. science d. science and maths

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Nehal is meeting a new girl called Toka.

Nehal : It's good to see you, Toka.

Toka : Me, too, Nehal.

Nehal : Where are you (1) ?

Toka : I'm from Hurghada.

Nehal : Hurghada! It is a beautiful (2) What grade are you in ?

Toka : I am in (3) one.

Nehal : What do you (4) after school ?

Toka : I usually (5) a shower and study my lessons.

Nehal : Do you have a hobby ?

Toka : Yes, I like tennis.

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. **SB** I always my homework before I have dinner.
 a. take b. do c. make d. have

2. **A** : Are you at maths ? **B** : Yes, I'm not bad at it.
 a. good b. favourite c. bad d. sad
3. We use a mouse in lesson.
 a. Arabic b. art
 c. computer studies d. maths
4. My mother often shopping at the weekend.
 a. takes b. goes c. does d. has
5. **WB** We go to the beach in winter.
 a. always b. ever c. never d. ago
6. What time do you up ? - At 6 : 00 am.
 a. wake b. walk c. wait d. talk
7. We have seven on school days.
 a. tables b. breaks c. lessons d. trips
8. **WB** My father works computers.
 a. at b. for c. with d. about
9. **SB** I usually have a shower and read my book bed.
 a. onto b. from c. in d. at
10. Mark is from France. He is
 a. English b. French c. Brazilian d. American

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. No, he ever does his homework after breakfast. (.....)
2. Where are you come from ? (.....)
3. I sometimes watches TV. (.....)
4. **SB** What subjects do they studied ? (.....)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

مذاتك في هذا الكتاب

"A day in your life"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test

on unit 2

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

تمه
يمكنك حل الاختبار
إلكترونياً وتصويبه

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :



استمع إلى معامك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (الموضوع الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Akeyo lives in
a. Nairobi b. Cairo c. Paris d. Rome
2. Her drive her to school.
a. brothers b. uncles c. sisters d. parents
3. Akeyo's school is
a. near b. far away c. not remote d. difficult
4. Akeyo goes to the to read.
a. playground b. bookshop c. snowmobile d. library

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Samar and Aya are talking about how they go to school.

Samar : How do you go to school ?

Aya : My dad (1) me to school every day. And you ?

Samar : I usually go to school by (2)

Aya : (3) do you usually go by bus ?

Samar : Because my school is (4) away.

Aya : How long does it (5) to go to school ?

Samar : It takes 50 minutes.

Aya : Which is better to go to school in the car or on the bus ?

Samar : Of course the car.

Aya : Thanks, Samar.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

I'm Nada. I'm from Hurghada by the Red Sea. I'm in preparatory one. My favourite subjects are science and home economics. I have science and maths in the first lesson every day, but I only have home economics

on Tuesday. I always do my homework before I have dinner. I usually have a light dinner عشاء خفيف : a cheese sandwich or some vegetables. I usually have a shower and surf the internet on my mobile phone. I sleep at 10:00 p.m. But before sleeping, I prepare my uniform and my school bag.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What does the underlined pronoun "I" refer to ?

.....

2. Give a suitable title for the passage.

.....

3. Why do you think Nada's mobile phone is useful ?

.....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. Nada goes to bed at

- a. 10:00 a.m. b. 12 p.m. c. 10:00 p.m. d. 1:00 a.m.

5. Nada does her homework she has dinner.

- a. in b. before c. after d. next

6. The underlined word "by" has the same meaning as ".....".

- a. above b. under c. next to d. far away

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Reading and painting are my favourite

- a. sports b. languages c. subjects d. hobbies

2. Sama happy when she meets her friends.

- a. are always b. is always c. always is d. always

3. We use a question mark at the of a question.

- a. first b. left c. end d. top

4. The is Ali.

- a. boys' name b. boy's name c. boy's the name d. boys'

5. I on my school uniform at 7 a.m.

- a. have b. talk c. take d. put

6. This is the
 a. school playground b. schools' playground
 c. school's playground d. school playground's
7. **SB** We can use a comma to items in a list.
 a. separate b. come c. have d. take
8. We go to the in science lessons.
 a. garden b. laboratory c. park d. club
9. **WB** An email is a simple sent through the internet.
 a. subject b. message c. blog d. post
10. It's healthy to to school.
 a. cycle b. use c. recycle d. rain

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. **SB** The girl's names are Sara and Toka. (.....)
 2. Who's pencil is this ? - It's Huda's. (.....)
 3. Let's goes to the zoo. (.....)
 4. **WB** We go never to the beach in winter. (.....)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

كتاب منه في نهاية الكتاب

"Jobs you do at home"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Quiz

on units

1&2

اختبار تراكمي على الوحدات (٢، ١)

- يقوم المعلم باختيار اختبار مصغر (واحد) من (A) or (B) لكل طالب لقياس وتقويم استيعابه للمعلومات الواردة في الوحدات

Model A



* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Playing chess is one of my favourite
a. subjects b. colours c. hobbies d. ideas
2. tablet is this ? - It's mine.
a. Who b. Whose c. How d. Which
3. We go to school on Fridays.
a. always b. usually c. ever d. never
4. A child who doesn't have a father or mother is called a/an
a. member b. cousin c. orphan d. adult
5. We always our problems with our parents.
a. go b. discuss c. drive d. cut

Model B



* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. He visited friend yesterday.
a. him b. hers c. mine d. his
2. The athletes hard to be in the next Olympics.
a. use b. train c. find d. make
3. I look at the to know the time of the English lesson.
a. library b. bell c. timetable d. laboratory
4. The sun us heat and light.
a. gives b. giving c. given d. gave
5. She voluntary work at a children's hospital.
a. plays b. makes c. does d. watches

UNIT 3

Different People

8B pages 22-31 4B pages 80-82



Objectives

- **Reading :**
A description of a sports star, a blog post, Alice's Adventures in Wonderland
- **Writing :**
Writing a blog post about a friend
- **Listening :**
Descriptions of people
- **Speaking :**
Describing people, talking about likes and dislikes
- **Language :**
have / has got, can / can't
- **Life Skills :**
Respect for diversity, resilience

العلامة : سبق أسئلة ذات الخيارات
العلامة : سبق أسئلة ذات الخيارات

أداة لتعلم اللغة الإنجليزية
(Master your terms) تلمذ





I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

blond hair (n)	شعر أشقر	beard (n)	لحية
curly hair (n)	شعر مجعد	moustache (n)	شارب (شنب)
dark hair (n)	شعر داكن	glasses (n)	نظارة
straight hair (n)	شعر غير مجعد	scarf (n)	إيشارب (طرحة)
team (n)	فريق	sports star (n)	نجم رياضي
running (n)	الجرى	grey (n)	رمادي اللون
fans (n)	مشجعين - معجبين	feature (n)	سمة / ميزة
runner (n)	عداء / متسابق	poor people (n)	الفقراء

- لتوضيح** Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- Master your Vocabulary** يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
- Glossary** لحصيلة أكبر (التميز) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 1

SB pages 22 & 23 WB page 86

description (n)	وصف	holiday (n)	أجازة
Italian (n)	اللغة الإيطالية - إيطالي الجنسية	of course	بالطبع

Lesson 2

SB pages 24 & 25 WB page 87

smile (d) (v), (n)	يبتسم - ابتسامة	video games (n)	ألعاب فيديو
footballer (n)	لاعب كرة قدم	funny (adj)	مضحك
score (d) (v)	يحز / يسجل	Cairo Tower (n)	برج القاهرة
squash (n)	لعبة الاسكواش	nicely (adv)	بطريقة لطيفة
person (n)	شخص	name (d) (v), (n)	يسمى / يذكر - اسم

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
choose يختار	chose	chosen
give يعطي	gave	given
build يبني	built	built

Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite العكس
famous مشهور	unknown غير معروف
normal طبيعي - عادي	abnormal غير طبيعي
strong قوى	weak ضعيف
busy مشغول	free حر

Study these definitions

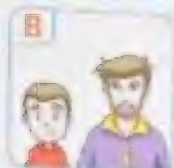
ادرس هذه التعريفات

beard	hair that grows on a man's face or chin	لحية / ذقن
blond	yellow or light brown hair	أشقر (الشعر)
curly	hair that has turns	شعر مجعد
dark	brown or black hair	شعر داكن اللون
Europe	a continent. France, Germany, Italy and Spain are some of the countries in Europe	قارة أوروبا
friendly	behaving in a way to people that shows you like them	ودود
glasses	what you wear over your eyes to help you see better	نظارة
goal	when you win a point in e.g. football	هدف (في كرة القدم)
kind	wanting to help and be good to people	طيب / عطوف
moustache	hair that grows above a man's top lip	شارب (شيب)
score	win points / goals in a game or a match	يسجل (نقاط أو أهداف)
smile	when the corners of your mouth turns up to show that you are happy	ابتسامة / يبتسم
straight	hair without any turns	شعر غير مجعد
fans	people enjoying watching football matches and players	مشجعين / معجبين

Listening and Reading

Listening

• on Lesson 1 SB page 23



Mazin : There's my friend, Samir.

Mum : I don't know Samir. What does he **look like**⁽¹⁾ ?

Mazin : He's got short, **dark hair**⁽²⁾.

Mum : Oh, I think I can see him. Has he got glasses ?

Mazin : No, he hasn't. His dad's with him.

Mum : Has Samir's dad got a **beard**⁽³⁾ ?

Mazin : Yes, he has.

Mum : Oh, yes. I can see Samir now.

Check Vocabulary

(1) بيشبه (2) شمر داكن (3) لحية / ذقن

Reading

• on Lesson 2 SB page 24

Mohamed Salah is my favourite **sports star**⁽¹⁾.
He plays football for a very good team in **Europe**⁽²⁾.
He plays for Egypt, too. He is very good at scoring goals. He is a **fast runner**⁽³⁾.



Check Vocabulary

(1) نجم رياضي (2) قارة أوروبا (3) عداء سريع

Mohamed Salah has usually got a big **smile**⁽⁴⁾. He is quite short for a footballer. He is 1.75 metres tall. In this photo, Mohamed Salah has got dark, **curly hair**⁽⁵⁾ and a **beard**⁽⁶⁾.

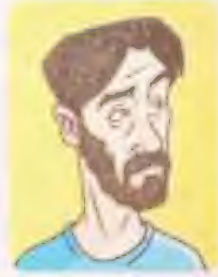
He is a kind person. He gives money to build schools and hospitals in Egypt. He also gives money to **poor people**⁽⁷⁾. He is very friendly and he always talks to his **fans**⁽⁸⁾.

He has not got much time for **hobbies**⁽⁹⁾, but when he is at home, he enjoys playing video games and watching films.

Check Vocabulary

4) ابتسامة 5) الشعر المجعد 6) لحية 7) الفقراء 8) المشجعين / المعجبين 9) هوايات

• on Lesson 1 WB page 86



The woman in the first picture has got long straight hair and glasses. The man in the second picture has got short curly dark hair and a moustache. The second woman has got short blond hair. The second man has got short dark hair and a beard.

• on Lesson 2 WB page 87

Mohamed Salah **can** score lots of goals and he **can** run very fast. He lives in England. He **can** speak English, of course. He lived in Italy for two years, so he **can** speak Italian, too! He is famous, so he **can't** have a normal life. If he goes outside, many people want to talk to him. He is very busy. He **can't** take many holidays.

Listening

• on Lesson 2 SB page 25

My favourite sports star is Doaa Elghobashy. She plays volleyball for Egypt. She's very tall. She's 180 centimetres tall. She's strong and she's fast. She can jump very high! She's friendly. She always has a big smile.



Videoscript

Lesson 2 SB page 24

Of course, football is a popular⁽¹⁾ sport in Egypt. There are many excellent⁽²⁾ Egyptian footballers⁽³⁾.

Mohammed Salah is one of the best players in the world. He's played for some famous football clubs in England and Italy.

Hossam Hassan, Mido and Essam el Hadary are all famous Egyptian footballers. They played football for teams in Africa and Europe.

People love playing it ... and watching it.

Thousands of people go to see football clubs like Al-Ahly ... and El-Zamalek.

The country's national⁽⁴⁾ side are known as the Pharaohs⁽⁵⁾. They often play in the World Cup. This is a tournament⁽⁶⁾ for the best teams in the world.

The Pharaohs sometimes win a tournament called the Africa Cup of Nations⁽⁷⁾. This is a competition⁽⁸⁾ for countries in Africa. In 2019, it was in Egypt!

Do you like playing football?

Do you like watching football?

Check Vocabulary

مشهور / محبوب (1)

ممتاز (2)

للعبي كرة القدم (3)

قومي / وطني (4)

الفراسة الشب الشرقى القومى لكرة القدم (5)

بطولة (6)

كأس الأمم الأفريقية (7)

منافسة / مسابقة (8)

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 enjoy / like + (inf. + ing)

يستمتع بـ / يحب

- ex.:** - He enjoys eating pizza in a restaurant.
- I like playing football and watching films.

2 tall / long

• tall (adj)

طويل (تستخدم للأطوال الرأسية: مباني / أشخاص / أشجار)

- ex.:** - My brother is tall (✓).
- My brother is long (✗).

• long (adj)

طويل (تستخدم للأطوال الأفقية: المسافات)

- ex.:** - My hair is long (✓).
- My hair is tall (✗).

3 Adjectives

• لاحظ أن الصفات تستخدم في وصف الأسماء وتسبقها

- ex.:** - He is a fast runner.
- He is a kind person.

• الصفة أيضًا يمكن أن تأتي بعد (v. to be)

- ex.:** - She is beautiful.

4 Adverbs

• لاحظ أن الظرف يتكون بإضافة (ly) للصفة ويأتي بعد الفعل

- ex.:** - Nader always talks nicely to people. He's very nice.

(١) لاحظ أيضًا أن هناك ظروف لا يضاف لها (ly) ولكن تبقى كما هي

- ex.:** - He is a fast runner. He runs fast.

(٢) لاحظ أيضًا أن هناك كلمات تنتهي بـ (ly) وتعتبر صفات وليس ظروف مثل (friendly)

- ex.:** - Mohammed Salah is friendly.

5 dark

مظلم - غامق

- ex.:** - The room is dark. I can't see.
- My shirt is dark blue.

• لاحظ : تستخدم كلمة dark لوصف hair - eyes - skin لتدل على اللون البني أو الأسود.

6 glass / a glass / glasses

* glass

ex.: Windows are made of glass.

الزجاج (اسم الجمع)

* a glass

ex.: Bassem drinks a glass of milk every evening.

كوب (اسم تعدد مفرد)

* glasses

ex.: How many glasses of tea do you drink a day?
- I can't find my glasses. I can't see without them.
- My grandfather is wearing glasses.

أكواب - نظارة

7 sport / sports

* sport (n)

ex.: Tennis is my favourite sport.

رياضة

* sports (adj) (n)

ex.: Essam el Hadary is a famous sports star.

رياضي

Important expressions & prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

easy for	سهلاً لـ	give money to	يعطي مائلاً لـ
look like	يشبه	talk to	يتحدث إلى شخص
know about	يعرف عن	pick up	يلتقط
play for	يلعب لصالح / لأجل	score goals	يجرز أهداف
play	→ squash	quite short for	قصير إلى حد ما
	→ tennis	go at (70 km/h)	يسير بسرعة (٧٠ كيلو متر في الساعة)
	→ volleyball	jump high	يقفز لأعلى
	→ video games		
	يلعب ألعاب الفيديو		

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

- People who enjoy watching their favourite team in the stadium are called _____.
a. fins b. figs c. fans d. pans
- Mona has _____ hair. It's not straight.
a. blond b. curly c. long d. short
- The hair growing over the man's mouth is called _____.
a. feature b. mouse c. moustache d. beard
- The hair that grows on a man's cheeks جود and chin ذقن is called _____.
a. bread b. beard c. bird d. bride
- My sister likes her hair to be _____. It's very light brown colour.
a. blind b. blond c. grey d. dark
- She's wearing a _____ around her neck.
a. sock b. scarf c. dress d. T-shirt

SB, WB & Previous exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

- WB** The Queen of England is very _____. She has got many houses.
(امتحان مجمع الشرقية - عهيا ٢٠٢١)
a. poor b. ugly c. strong d. rich
- We play _____ by kicking the ball.
(Rafah-North Sinai 2020)
a. football b. horse riding c. basketball d. tennis
- WB** Mohammed Salah is very famous, so he can't have a / an _____ life.
a. normal b. unusual c. strange d. busy
- SB** My grandma sometimes gives me presents. She's _____.
a. unfriendly b. poor c. friendly d. strong
- WB** A baby bird is very _____. It can't fly for many days.
(امتحان مجمع يمين مريوط - بيا ٢٠٢١)
a. weak b. poor c. ugly d. bad
- Mohammed Salah is an Egyptian _____ star. He is very famous.
(Samalout - Minia 2020)
a. sport b. sporty c. sport's d. sports

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

13. What's your favourite football _____ ? - Liverpool.
 a. language b. colour c. subject d. team
14. My mother can't see well. She needs to wear _____.
 a. jackets b. dresses c. glasses d. jeans
15. People around the world have different _____. They don't look like each other.
 a. dreams b. features c. subjects d. balls

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

16. Mohamed Salah is quite short _____ a footballer.
 a. on b. from c. for d. in
17. A : What does your brother _____ like ?
 B : He's got short, curly hair.
 a. make b. take c. look d. give

III Language

(A) have / has got يملك / لديه / عنده



1 Affirmative statements
الجملة الخبرية
المثبتة

I / We / You / They → have got = ('ve got)
اسم جمع

ex. They have got blond hair.

He / She / It → has got = ('s got)
اسم مفرد

ex. She has got dark hair.

2 Negative statements
الجملة الخبرية
المنفية

I / We / You / They → have not got = (haven't) got
اسم جمع

ex. We have not (haven't) got cars.

He / She / It → has not got = (hasn't) got
اسم مفرد

ex. He has not (hasn't) got a beard.

3

Interrogative

صيغة الاستفهام

Has (he / she / it) → got ?
أليس له / لها / له ؟

ex. - Has he got a car ?
* Yes, he has. * No, he hasn't.

Have (I / we / you / they) → got ?
أليس لديهم ؟

ex. - Have they got glasses ?
* Yes, they have. * No, they haven't.

لاحظ أن :

هناك أفعال أخرى تعطي معنى الملكية

own = possess

ex. : He owns/possesses a car.

(B) can / can't يستطيع / لا يستطيع

Expressing ability and inability

التعبير عن القدرة وعدم القدرة

Subject → can / cannot (can't)
فاعل مصدر الفعل inf.

ex. - Mohammed Salah can score many goals.
- I can't pick up that box. My arms are weak.

Asking about ability

السؤال عن القدرة

Yes / No questions السؤال بـ (هل)

a Can + subject الفاعل + inf. ?

ex. Can you climb a tree ?

Yes, I can.

No, I can't.

Wh-questions السؤال بكلمات الاستفهام

b Question word + can + subject الفاعل + inf مصدر الفعل .. ?

ex. A : What can you do, Ahmed ?

B : I can lift heavy weights.

لاحظ أن :

هناك تعبيرات وتركيبات أخرى تستخدم للتعبير عن القدرة

can + inf. = am / is / are able to + inf. = has / have the ability to + inf. / of + (inf. + ing)

can't + inf. = am / is / are not able to + inf. = doesn't / don't have the ability to + (inf.) / of + (inf. + ing)

Examples :

I can drive a car.

= I am able to drive a car.

= I have the ability to drive a car.

= I have the ability of driving a car.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

SB, WB and Previous Exams

1. **WB** Mohammed Salah _____ score a lot of goals. He is very fast.

(الامتحان مجمع الاسكتندرية - العجمي ٢٠٢١) / (الامتحان مجمع مرقاس - البليسا ٢٠٢١)

a. can

b. must

c. mustn't

d. has

2. Amira _____ got a car. She walks to work.

(El Fashn - Beni Suef 2020)

a. has

b. haven't

c. hasn't

d. have

3. **SB** I _____ got short, curly hair.

a. 've

b. 'm

c. 's

d. 'll

4. **SB** She _____ got blond hair.

a. have

b. having

c. has

d. is having

5. My father has _____ a smart phone.

(Deshna - Qena 2020)

a. get

b. got

c. gets

d. getting

تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

El-Moasser Exercises

6. _____ they got any pencils ?

a. Has

b. Are

c. Do

d. Have

7. _____ has got a new laptop.

a. They

b. I

c. She

d. We

8. We _____ any bikes.
 a. have got b. haven't got c. has got d. hasn't got
9. Has he got an umbrella? - No, he _____.
 a. haven't b. hasn't c. don't have d. wasn't
10. _____ Rahma and you got the same father? - Yes, we have.
 a. Has b. Does c. Have d. Do

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

🔄 SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. **SB** Has she got glasses? - Yes, she hasn't. ()
2. **SB** Have Samir's dad got a beard? ()
3. **SB** We can't give money to help poor people. ()
4. We has got an apple tree in the garden. (Answer: Ben Saef 20120) ()
5. She 've got curly hair. (1000 Adhania - Ghadfa 2020) ()

🔄 El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. My sister hasn't get a pen. ()
7. They has got pencils. ()
8. He lives in England. He can't speak English well. ()

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 2 SB page 24 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة 118 ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions :

- **Giving the main idea** إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

1. What's the main idea of the passage?
 - Mohamed Salah.

- **Extracting information** استخراج المعلومات

2. What is Mohamed Salah very good at?

3. How did you know that Mohamed Salah is very friendly?

2. Writing Corner

A. Read the sentences

يُعمل لسانعبدت على كتابة مقبرة إنشائية.

1. Salah is my favourite sports star. 1. صلاح هو - منى الرياضى المفضل
2. He plays for Liverpool Football Club and the Egyptian National Team. 2. يلعب لصلاح لنادى ليفربول لكرة القدم والفريق القومى المصرى.
3. He is a fast runner. 3. إنه عداء سريع.
4. He is very kind and gives money to the poor. 4. هو عطوف جدا ويعطى أموالا للمفقر.

B. Building sentences

⊙ Read and complete :

can - Are - has - able - can't

1. My sister _____ got blond hair.
2. I'm strong. I _____ pick up the box.
3. Ayman is _____ to play football.
4. _____ you able to drive a car ? - Yes, I am.

نموذج

بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات
اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين
قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة مقبرة إنشائية.

- Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"Mohamed Salah"

3. Speaking Corner

► Describing your favourite sports star : وصف نجمك الرياضى المفضل :

- My favourite sports star is (Messi) .
- He / She plays (football) .
- He / She's quite / very (fast) .
- He / She can (score goals) .

General Exercises

On

LESSONS 1 & 2

• Understand

• Remember

• Create



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع إلى ملف صوتي واختر الإجابة الصحيحة من الخيارات (a, b, c or d):

- Doaa Elghobashy is a _____ player.
a. basketball b. volleyball c. football d. handball
- She's _____ centimetres tall.
a. 180 b. 118 c. 50 d. 1800
- Doaa always has a big _____.
a. smile b. smell c. climb d. life
- Is she strong and fast?
a. No, she isn't strong. b. Yes, she is.
c. Yes, she was. d. No, she isn't fast.

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Kareem asks Yasser about his favourite sports star.

Kareem : What is your favourite sports star ?

Yasser : Mohammed Salah. He plays (1) _____ Egypt.

Kareem : (2) _____ sport does Mohammed Salah play ?

Yasser : (3) _____ .

Kareem : How does he help people ?

Yasser : He (4) _____ money to build schools and hospitals in Egypt.

Kareem : Does he (5) _____ a normal life ?

Yasser : No, he doesn't.

Kareem : Why ?

Yasser : Because he is famous and has a lot of fans.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- WB** Camels are very strong. They _____ carry 200 kilos of bags.
a. can b. cannot c. shouldn't d. mustn't
- Mohamed Salah is a great _____.
a. carpenter b. goalkeeper c. footballer d. doctor

3. He can run very fast and lots of goals.
a. score b. get c. give d. take
4. Most young people want to have It's a fashion.
a. noses b. beards c. mouths d. necks
5. **SB** I got glasses, but my sister has got glasses.
a. haven't b. have c. has d. hasn't
6. This man's photo is in all the papers. He's very
a. unknown b. famous c. free d. lazy
7. Has Salma got a pen ? No, she
a. haven't b. has c. hasn't d. have
8. How is Mona ? - She's 160 cm.
a. long b. tall c. deep d. fast
9. France, Germany and Italy are countries in
a. Europe b. Africa c. Asia d. Australia
10. "....." is the opposite of "fast".
a. Low b. Slow c. Quick d. Lucky

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. He is able to running fast. (.....)
2. Do you play the drums ? Yes, I can. (.....)
3. Rodina and Mohammed has got a camera. (.....)
4. Have she got chips for dinner ? (.....)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on : محبابك في نهاية الكتاب

"Your favourite sports star"



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

children's story	قصة أطفال	drawing (n)	الرسم
angry (adj)	غاضب	guess (ed) (v)	يخمن
painting (n)	الرسم بالفرشاة / اللوين	adventure (n)	مغامرة
scary (adj)	مزعج / مخيف	Wonderland (n)	أرض العجائب
brave (adj)	شجاع	paint (ed) (v)	يدهن / يلون
strange (adj)	غريب	frightened (adj)	خائف / مرعوب
blog post (n)	مستور مدونة	sensible (adj)	عاقل / حكيم
character (n)	شخصية		

• **Key Vocabulary** هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
 • **Master your Vocabulary** يقضي على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (**مادق Master**).
 • **Glossary** لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 3

SB pages 26 & 27 WB page 88

learning (n)	تعلم	diary (n)	مفكرة يومية
regularly (adv)	بانتظام	clear (adj)	واضح
online (adj) (adv)	متصل بالإنترنت	website (n)	موقع على الإنترنت

Lesson 4

SB page 28 WB page 89

simple (adj)	بسيط	laugh (ed) (v)	يضحك
hearts (n)	قلوب	shout (ed) (v)	يصرخ / يصيح
meaning (n)	معنى	true story (n)	قصة حقيقية
main (adj)	أساسي / رئيسي	decisions (n)	قرارات
check (ed) (v)	يتحقق / يفحص	notebook (n)	دفتر / كراسة

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
swim يسبح	swam	swum
begin يبدأ	began	begun
understand يفهم	understood	understood

Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite العكس
brave شجاع	coward جبان
true حقيقي	false زائف / مزيف
able قادر	unable غير قادر

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

angry	very cross	غاضب
brave	not easily frightened	شجاع
blog	is a website on which someone writes regularly. It is like an online diary	مدونة على الإنترنت
character	a person in a book or a film	شخصية (في فيلم أو كتاب)
clever	good at learning things	ماهر
late	arriving after the correct time	متأخر
scary	something that makes you feel frightened	مخيف
sensible	thinking carefully so that you do the right thing	عقل / حكيم
twice	two times	مرتان

Writing Skills



★ اتقن مهارة الكتابة عن طريق :

• **Writing skills** في نهاية كل وحدة التي
تمنحك من تكوين وترتيب الجمل ومهارة الكتابة
اجابة كل الموضوعات الإنشائية.

المعاصر في اللغة الانجليزية
امنح نفسك لمن يستحق

II Reading and Listening

Reading

• on Lesson 3 SB page 26

All about me

Hi! My name is Yunis. I have got short, dark curly hair⁽¹⁾. I live in Alexandria with my mum, dad and two brothers.

My favourite school subject is history⁽²⁾. I love learning about the past. I like maths and science⁽³⁾, too. I do not like art⁽⁴⁾ because I am not very good at drawing or painting.

I often play sport after school. My favourite⁽⁵⁾ sport is basketball⁽⁶⁾. I am good at it because I am tall and I can jump high. I like swimming⁽⁷⁾, too. I go swimming twice a week.

At home, I like reading and playing video games⁽⁸⁾. I do not like watching TV. I think it is boring⁽⁹⁾.



Check Vocabulary

(1) شعر قصير (2) مادة التاريخ (3) العلوم (4) الرسم (5) مفضل (6) كرة السلة (7) السباحة (8) ألعاب فيديو (9) ممل

Listening

• on Lesson 3 SB page 27

Girl 1 : Let's play a game. I'm looking at a girl. Who is it ?

Girl 2 : Does she like watching TV ?

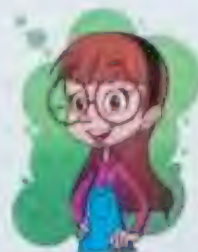
Girl 1 : No, she doesn't.

Girl 2 : Does she like swimming ?

Girl 1 : Yes, she does.

Girl 2 : It's Noha.

Girl 1 : Good ! OK. Number two. Who is it ?



Girl 2 : Does she like swimming ?

Girl 1 : Yes, she does. She loves swimming !

Girl 2 : Does she like playing basketball ?

Girl 1 : No, she doesn't.

Girl 2 : It's Dina.

Girl 1 : Well done ! Three. Who is this ?

Girl 2 : Does she like watching TV ?

Girl 1 : Yes, she does.

Girl 2 : It's Eman.

Girl 1 : No, it isn't !

Girl 2 : Does she like basketball ?

Girl 1 : Yes, she does.

Girl 2 : It's Maya.

Girl 1 : Yes !

Girl 2 : OK, so the last one loves painting, she likes watching TV and she doesn't like playing basketball. It's Eman.

Girl 1 : Yes again !



Reading

• on Lesson 4 SB page 28

Alice's Adventures in Wonderland

By Lewis Carroll

Alice's Adventures in Wonderland is a famous⁽¹⁾ children's story. Alice's adventure⁽²⁾ begins when she goes to Wonderland. Alice thinks that Wonderland is interesting⁽³⁾, but it is a strange place. She is a sensible⁽⁴⁾ girl, but she does not understand Wonderland. Alice is also brave⁽⁵⁾ and clever. She meets a lot of interesting characters. Alice often sees the White Rabbit. The White Rabbit is very busy – and he is usually very late. He always runs fast.



Check Vocabulary

(1) مشهور (2) مغامرة (3) مثير (4) عاقل / ذكي (5) شجاع

The Cheshire Cat is a funny animal. He has got a big smile and he is very friendly. He tells Alice about Wonderland and helps her to find different places and characters⁽⁶⁾.



The Queen of Hearts is not very nice. She is a scary⁽⁷⁾ person. She is always angry⁽⁸⁾ and she shouts at people. Alice is brave, so she is not frightened⁽⁹⁾ of her. At the end of the story, all the characters help Alice so she can go home again.



Check Vocabulary

(6) شخصيات (7) مخيف (8) غاضب (9) خائف

on Lesson 3 WB page 88

What is your favourite subject ?

- My name is Riham. My favourite subject at school is Science. I love learning about how things work. I like doing maths, too. I am quite good at maths.



Which sport do you like ?

- I quite like doing sport. My favourite sport is tennis. I like playing it with my friends, but I am not very good at it.

What do you do in the evening ?

- I usually go home after school. I do not like playing computer games. After I do my homework, I like reading a book. I like writing stories, too.



General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 Because → (فعل + فاعل) جملة

لأن (ترتبط السبب بالنتيجة)

ex.: - Ahmed is good at basketball because he is tall and fast.

2 another / other

* another + اسم مفرد

ex.: - I can see another boy.

آخر

• other + اسم جمع

ex.: - I can see other boys.

أخرون

3 too

أيضا (تأتي في نهاية الجملة)

ex.: - My brother likes swimming. I like swimming, too.

4 interesting / interested

* interesting (adj.)

شيق / رائع (وصف الأشياء والأشخاص)

ex.: - She meets a lot of interesting characters. رائع

- She thinks that Wonderland is interesting. شيق / مثير

* interested (adj.) (noun / inf. + ing) مهتم بـ ويتبعها حرف الجر in متبوعاً بـ

ex.: - She is interested in history.

- She is interested in reading novels.

5

help + مفعول به +

inf. مصدر

to + inf. المصدر

ex.: - We help the poor people live / to live a happy life.

Important expressions & prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

live $\begin{cases} \text{with} \\ \text{in} \end{cases}$	يعيش مع (شخص) يعيش في	shout at	يصرخ في
frightened of + (inf. + ing/n)	خائف من	play > a sport	يلعب رياضة
write in order	يكتب بالترتيب	twice a week	مرتين في الأسبوع
learn about the past	يتعلم عن الماضي	do maths	يلحل مسائل الرياضيات
do art	يقوم بالرسم	make good decisions	يأخذ قرارات جيدة
has no time	ليس لديه وقت	know a lot about	يعرف الكثير عن
get angry	يغضب	feel hungry	يألمع بالجوع
at the end of	في نهاية	feel happy	يشعر بالسعادة

Exercise on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

➤ Key vocabulary

- We often get _____ when we are unhappy about something.
a. angry b. happy c. pleased d. content
- The word _____ has the same meaning as "frightening".
a. scared b. scary c. frightened d. afraid
- He likes _____ with water colours.
a. doing b. learning c. reading d. painting
- A _____ person is happy to do something dangerous.
a. strange b. brave c. frightened d. funny
- My father is _____. He thinks well.
a. bored b. nervous c. sensible d. strange

➤ SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

- WB** I love learning about how things work, so I love _____.
a. history b. Arabic c. science d. English
- WB** A _____ is a person in a book or a film. (امتحان مجمع كذا - دينا ٢١ - ٢٠١٧)
a. character b. driver c. doctor d. farmer
- I like adventure stories, they are _____. (Mentia 2020)
a. excited b. interested c. amazed d. exciting
- SB** I read Alice's _____ in Wonderland which is a wonderful children's story.
a. History b. Sports c. Adventures d. Comedy

➤ El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

- You should do exercises _____.
a. badly b. regularly c. nicely d. funnily
- "Brave" is the opposite of "_____".
a. famous b. coward c. crazy d. late
- Adel Emam is the _____ character in the new film.
a. mean b. main c. mine d. man
- A woman who rules a country is called a _____.
a. hero b. manager c. king d. queen

➔ Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. She likes art.
 a. doing b. making c. giving d. having
15. How often do you go to the library ? - a week.
 a. Two b. Second c. Twice d. One
16. Good teachers always good decisions.
 a. give b. make c. do d. order

III Language

• هناك بعض الأفعال التي يمكن أن يتبعها (inf. + ing) أو (noun) اسم

like / love /
 enjoy / prefer
 / don't like /
 hate / dislike

(inf. + ing / noun)

- ex. - I like swimming. - She loves learning about the past.
 - They don't like watching TV. - She doesn't like painting.
 - Salma likes maths.

• وعند الاستفهام (بسؤال يبدأ بفعل مساعد) باستخدام هذه الأفعال يكون السؤال كالآتي :

Interrogative
 في السؤال

Do
 Does + (subject) + Like / Love _ ?
 فاعل

- ex. Do you like playing tennis ?
 - Yes, I do. - No, I don't.
- ex. Does she like playing tennis ?
 - Yes, she does. - No, she doesn't.

هناك بعض الصفات تتبعها حروف جر ثم (inf. + ing) او (noun) اسم :

good at /
interested in /
bad at

→ inf. + ing / noun

- Ahmed is **good at** English.
- Huda is **interested in** reading adventure stories.

لاحظ أن الأفعال :

like / love / prefer

إذا سبقها (to + inf.) فتبعها (*d = would)

He'd like to drive a small car.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. **SB** she like watching TV ? - Yes, she does.
a. Do b. Does c. Doing d. Don't
2. **WB** I don't like computer games. (الامتحان مجمع القليوبية - الخانكة ٢٠٢١)
a. play b. playing c. plays d. played
3. **SB** Noha like swimming.
a. don't b. isn't c. aren't d. doesn't
4. **SB** Dina likes very much.
a. paint b. painted c. painting d. to painting
5. I don't like
a. fly b. flew c. flying d. flown (El Agami-Alex, 2020)

تدريبات كتاب المعاصر El-Moasser Exercises

6. Captain Bassem is good at guns.
a. use b. to use c. uses d. using
7. Hoda doesn't enjoy action films.
a. watching b. watch c. to watch d. watches

8. They'd like computer games.
 a. play b. to play c. plays d. playing
9. He prefers maths.
 a. do b. did c. doing d. does
10. She doesn't staying up late.
 a. like b. likes c. liked d. to like

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

- ➔ SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة
1. Emad likes watch football matches on TV. (El Fashn-Beni suef 2020) (.....)
2. WB Does your father like travel ? (.....)
3. Does she like play chess ? (Auseem-Giza 2020) (.....)
- ➔ El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر
4. I hate walk in the sun in summer. (.....)
5. Baleigh is interested in listens to music. (.....)
6. Would you prefer ride bikes ? (.....)
7. Ayman dislikes to have dirty pets. (.....)

Skills Corner



ليمية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

1. Reading Corner

لم براءة Reading on lesson 4 SB page 28 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ١٣٤ ثم قم بالتدرب علي اجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions :

- **Giving the main idea** إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.

- Alice's Adventures in Wonderland.

- **Extracting information** استخراج المعلومات

2. How many characters did Alice meet in Wonderland ?

3. Who helped Alice find different places and characters in Wonderland ?

2. Writing Corner

معاراة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جعل تساعدك على كتابة مقرة إنشائية

1. I'm Yunis. I live in Alexandria with my parents. أنا يونس. أعيش في مدينة الإسكندرية مع والدي.
2. My favourite subject is history. وادنى المفضلة هي التاريخ.
3. I don't like art as I'm not good at drawing. أنا لا أحب مادة التزيين الفنية لأنني لست جيدًا في الرسم.
4. My favourite sport is basketball. رباغنى المفضلة هي كرة السلة.
5. I go swimming twice a week. اذهب إلى الساحة مرتين في الأسبوع.
6. I like reading and playing video games at home. أحب القراءة ولعب ألعاب الفيديو بالمنزل.

B. Building sentences

⊙ Read and complete :

doesn't - drive - driving - playing - in

1. Samira is interested _____ eating pizza.
2. Do you like _____ tennis ? - No , I don't.
3. He _____ love painting.
4. Leen would like to _____ a small car.

لتوبة

بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات
اللغوية الخاصة بالدروس
قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة مقرة إنشائية.

- Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :
"Your favourite story"

3. Speaking Corner

معاراة التحدث

Describing a character from a story:

عند وصف شخصية من قصة:

- He's / She's صفة
- He / She فعل

ex.: - Alice is a sensible girl, but she doesn't understand Wonderland.

- The White Rabbit is very busy. He always runs fast.
- The Queen of Hearts is not very nice. She is a scary person.
- The Cheshire Cat is a funny animal. He has got a big smile and he is very friendly.

General Exercises

On

LESSONS

3 & 4

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed is asking Alaa about his favourite sport.

Ahmed : What's your favourite sport ?

Alaa : (1) is my favourite sport.

Ahmed : Basketball ! (2) are you good at it ?

Alaa : Because I am tall and (3)

Ahmed : Where do you play it ?

Alaa : I play it in the club.

Ahmed : How (4) do you play it ?

Alaa : Twice a week.

Ahmed : Can I play with you ?

Alaa : Yes, of (5)

2 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Alice's Adventures in Wonderland is a famous children's story. Alice had a lot of adventures in Wonderland. She met a lot of interesting characters. Wonderland was strange but interesting place for Alice. Alice was a sensible, brave and clever girl. **She** met the White Rabbit that was always late but ran fast. The Cheshire Cat was a funny animal which helped Alice to find different places and characters. The Queen of Hearts was a scary person and she shouted at people but Alice was not frightened of her. At the end of the story, all the characters helped Alice so she could go home again.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What does this passage talk about ?

2. How did the Cheshire Cat help Alice ?

3. Why do you think Alice was brave ?

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The worst character is

a. Alice

c. The Queen of Hearts

b. Cheshire Cat

d. King

5. Alice met a lot of interesting in Wonderland.
 a. characters b. kings c. places d. blog posts
6. The underlined pronoun "She" refers to
 a. the Queen of Hearts b. Alice
 c. the Cheshire Cat d. the White Rabbit

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. teaches us many things about the past.
 a. Geography b. Maths c. Algebra d. History
2. **SB** Yunis doesn't like watching TV because he thinks it is
 a. interesting b. boring c. beautiful d. exciting
3. Does Toka playing tennis ?
 a. likes b. to like c. liked d. like
4. You can write some information in your post.
 a. book b. office c. blog d. notebook
5. They love about science.
 a. learn b. learning c. learned d. learns
6. I don't like because I'm not good at painting.
 a. art b. history c. science d. maths
7. **VB** A person makes good decisions قرارات.
 a. lazy b. foolish c. sensible d. funny
8. I'm always of dogs.
 a. frightening b. frighten c. terrifying d. frightened
9. Do you like basketball ? - Yes, I
 a. do b. does c. is d. have
10. When Mr Ahmed is angry, he at people.
 a. smiles b. shouts c. goes d. runs

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. He likes eat ice cream. (.....)
2. I am not very good at draw. (.....)
3. How often do Samar play tennis ? (.....)
4. He'd like going to the park. (.....)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on : مسابقات في نهاية الكتاب

"A famous children's story "



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

playground (n)	ملعب	wheelchair (n)	كرسي متحرك
best friend (n)	أفضل صديق	storm (n)	عاصفة
classroom (n)	حجرة الدراسة	personality (n)	شخصية
secret (n)	سر	appearance (n)	مظهر / هيئة

تلميح Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 5

SB page 29 WB page 90

call (ed) (v)	يُسمى / يدعى	island (n)	جزيرة
pool (n)	حمام سباحة	review (n)	مقال نقدي

Lesson 6

SB page 30 WB page 91

travel (led) (v)	يسافر	join (ed) (v)	ينضم
difference (n)	اختلاف	connect (ed) (v)	يربط / يتصل

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
speaking يتحدث	spoke	spoken
thinking يعتقد / يفكر	thought	thought
telling يخبر	told	told

Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite العكس
easy سهل	difficult صعب
remember يتذكر	forget ينسى

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

together	with one or more people	معًا
wheelchair	a chair with wheels, for people who cannot walk	كرسي متحرك
appearance	what the person looks like	مظهر
personality	what the person is like	شخصية
hobbies	what the person likes doing	هوايات

II Reading and Listening

Reading

on Lesson 6 SB page 30

Who's your best friend ?

My **best friend**⁽¹⁾ is called Basel. He has got straight hair and brown eyes. He is kind and he is very funny. He likes reading and playing **video games**⁽²⁾. Those are my favourite hobbies, too !



Basel has got a **wheelchair**⁽³⁾ because he cannot walk. It is not easy for Basel to travel around school. I open doors for Basel and I help him to get things in the classroom.

Basel's wheelchair is not usually a **problem**⁽⁴⁾. We do a lot of things **together**⁽⁵⁾. He goes to all of my lessons and we have lunch together. Sometimes we even play football in the **playground**⁽⁶⁾. Basel cannot run, but he is fast in his wheelchair!

I like Basel because he is a lot of fun. I am very happy that he is my friend.
Fady, 12

Check Vocabulary

- (1) أفضل صديق (2) ألعاب فيديو (3) كرسي متحرك (4) مشكلة (5) معًا (6) ملعب

Listening

on Lesson 5 WB page 90

1. My name's **Nevine**. I like sports and I love playing tennis.
2. I'm **Sayed**. My favourite subject is English and I like writing stories.
3. Hi, I'm **Maya**. I like art. I don't like drawing but I love painting.
4. I'm **Rami**. I love swimming, but I don't like swimming in the sea. It's cold.
5. My name's **Lina** and this is my sister **Maya**. We don't like watching TV but we like reading books.

Reading

on Lesson 5 WB page 90

My favourite book is **Treasure Island**. It is by **Robert Louis Stevenson**. It is about a brave boy called Jim. He travels in a big boat to an island. It is very far from his home. The boat has got many scary men on it and they all want to find some money on the island. It is very exciting.



My favourite book is **Anne of Green Gables** by **Lucy Maud Montgomery**. It is about an orphan girl called Anne. She goes to live with a brother and sister in the country. Life is not easy for her and she has many adventures, but Anne is a sensible girl. It is a good book.



My favourite book is called **Gulliver's Travels** by **Jonathan Swift**. It is about a clever doctor. He works on a boat but there is a big storm. He falls in the sea and swims to a strange place. All the people here are very tall. Some of them are very friendly, but some of them are scary. I like the book very much.



• on Lesson 7 SB page 31

Magda has got a lot of hobbies. She likes reading and sport. She likes playing basketball and she likes playing tennis, but her favourite sport is swimming. She loves swimming! Magda doesn't like playing video games and she also doesn't like playing chess.



General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 travel - travel around

* travel

يسافر لدولة أخرى / لبلدة أخرى

ex.: - Ahmed travelled to France last week.

* travel around

يتجول في مكان

ex.: - **SB** It's easy for Basel to travel around school.

2 He's a lot of fun. = He is very funny.

هو شخص لديه الكثير من المرح / شخص مرح

3 Using joining words to connect ideas. استخدام كلمات الربط لربط الأفكار.

and / because / but

• تستخدم (and) للعطف والإضافة.

ex.: - He goes to all of his lessons and we have lunch together.

• تستخدم (but) لربط الأفكار المتناقضة.

ex.: - Basel cannot run, but he is fast in his wheelchair!

• تستخدم (because) لربط السبب بالنتيجة.

ex.: - I like Basel because he has a lot of fun.

4 Whose / Who's

* Whose ?

لمن / ملك من ... ؟ (كلمة استفهام تسأل عن الملكية)

ex.: - A : Whose bag is this ?

B : It's Ali's.

* Who's = Who is ?

من يكون ... ؟

ex.: - A : Who's your best friend ? B : Ali.

5 It's + صفة + (for + ضمير مفعول + to + inf. المصدر

ex.: - **5.1** It is not easy (for Basel) to travel around the city.

- It is important (for Hala) to study hard.

Important expressions & prepositions

easy for	سهل لـ	difficult for ...	صعب على ...
in a wheelchair	في كرسي متحرك	make sure	يؤكد
different from	مختلف عن	get things	يحصل على الأشياء
work on a boat	يعمل على المركب	far from home	بعيد عن المنزل
on the island	على الجزيرة	(be) written by	كتب بواسطة
do things	يقوم بأداء أشياء	a book by	كتب ثم تاليفه
			عن طريق (اسم الشخص)

Exercise

on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

➤ Key vocabulary

- You should have a good _____ when you have an interview.
a. size b. appearance c. color d. difference
- You shouldn't tell people about your _____.
a. book b. house c. dress d. secrets
- People who can't walk can use a _____ to travel around.
a. chair b. wheel c. wheelchair d. ship
- Magdy has a good _____. He is very kind and sensible.
a. person b. personality c. hair d. beard

➤ SB , WB and Previous Exams

- 5.2** My favourite book is _____ "Treasure Island".
a. called b. played c. opened d. travelled
- 5.3** I like Basel because he is a lot of _____.
a. fun b. fans c. fins d. falls

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. _____ short stories helps young children improve their language.
a. Speaking b. Walking c. Reading d. Calling
8. Ali is tall but his mother is short. They are _____.
a. difficult b. different c. the same d. difference
9. Mohammed Salah _____ Liverpool Football Club in 2018.
a. called b. opened c. joined d. walked

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

10. This is an exciting book. It was written _____ Naguib Mahfouz.
a. in b. on c. by d. from
11. Children who can't walk can _____ a lot of things using wheelchairs.
a. make b. give c. do d. have
12. Basel can't walk. It's not easy _____ him to travel around school.
a. about b. for c. in d. of
13. He lived _____ the island alone for 21 years.
a. on b. from c. about d. under
14. Travelling _____ Cairo in the rush hour ساعة الذروة is not easy.
a. about b. around c. above d. under

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع معارفات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 6 SB page 30 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ١٤٥ ثم قم بالتدرب على اجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions :

- **Giving the main idea** إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

1. What's the main idea of the passage ?

- Basel is my best friend.

- **Extracting information** استخراج المعلومات

2. Why is Basel using a wheelchair ?

3. What does Fady do with Basel ?

2. Writing Corner

A. Read the sentences

1. My best friend is Basel. He is kind and funny.
باسل هو صديق المفضل فهو طيب ومرح.
2. He likes reading and playing video games.
هو يحب القراءة ولعب الفيديو.
3. Basel has got a wheelchair because he can't walk.
باسل لديه كرسي متحرك لأنه لا يستطيع المشي.
4. We study and have meals together.
نحن نذاكر ونتناول الوجبات معاً.

B. Building sentences

⊙ Read and complete :

but - because - eat - eating - to

1. I like Ali he tells funny jokes.
2. She likes pizza.
3. Salma is clever, she can't solve the problem.
4. He is able cycle around the city.

نقد رئاسة القواعد والمفردات
الفرعية الخاصة بالدرس
قد يكتب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

- Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"Your best friend"

3. Speaking Corner

Discussing your favourite book:

مناقشة كتابك المفضل :

- I love reading books by اسم الكاتب / المؤلف
- My favourite book is اسم الكتاب
- It's about a girl / a boy called اسم الشخصية الرئيسية
- The other characters are أسماء الشخصيات الفرعية
- In this book, the boy / girl likes ما تحبه الشخصية
- I like اسم الشخصية التي تحبها السبب because he/she

General Exercises

On

LESSONS 5 & 6

• Understand

• Apply

• Create



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. What is your best friend called ?
a. Omar b. Yasser c. Basel d. Tarek
2. He has got hair and brown eyes.
a. curly b. blond c. long d. straight
3. Basel is
a. unfriendly b. coward c. kind d. unkind
4. What does he like doing ? - He likes
a. reading b. playing video games
c. drawing d. a & b

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ramy and Kamal are talking about their favourite subjects.

Ramy : What are your favourite school subjects ?

Kamal : I like English and (1)

Ramy : (2) do you like history ?

Kamal : To learn about the past.

(3) about you, Ramy ?

Ramy : I (4) art and computer studies.

Kamal : Why do you like computer studies ?

Ramy : Because I like playing computer (5)

Kamal : Oh, me too.

Ramy : Fantastic !

Kamal : OK. Let's play together.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A is a place where we do sports.
a. funfair b. fair c. waterwheel d. playground
2. Something hidden from others is called a
a. secret b. secretary c. problem d. game

3. My _____ friend is Abdel Rahman. He helps me a lot.
a. worst b. bad c. tall d. best
4. My teacher has got _____ hair. It hasn't got any turns.
a. straight b. curly c. blond d. dark
5. **SB** It is important to be _____ like Alice.
a. coward b. weak c. brave d. sad
6. My sister Leen has got long hair _____ brown eyes.
a. and b. because c. but d. so
7. My father is very busy, _____ he does sports every day.
a. because b. but c. so d. and
8. It's important _____ sport regularly.
a. do b. doing c. done d. to do
9. **SB** Basel has got a _____ because he can't walk.
a. table b. ladder c. wheelchair d. pool
10. He likes reading and _____ video games.
a. playing b. giving c. trying d. hurrying

4

Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Has your father gets glasses ? (_____)
2. **WB** Nevine loves play tennis. (_____)
3. He'd like drinking orange juice. (_____)
4. **WB** Rami loves basketball and he doesn't like volleyball. (_____)

5

Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

مراجعة كتابك المفضل

"A review on your favourite book"

Test

on unit 3

• Understand • Apply • Create

تنويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار
إلكترونياً وتصويبه

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :



استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (تصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Yunis has got short, curly hair.
a. dark b. brown c. grey d. blue
2. Yunis's favourite subject is
a. art b. science c. maths d. history
3. He doesn't like
a. science b. history c. art d. geography
4. He is not good at
a. singing b. eating c. drawing d. cooking

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Tarek is telling Tamer about his best friend.

Tamer : What is your best friend's name ?

Tarek : He is (1) Basel.

Tamer : What does he (2) like ?

Tarek : He has got curly hair and green eyes.

Tamer : What (3) he like doing ?

Tarek : He likes reading and playing video (4)

Tamer : What is he good at ?

Tarek : He is good at (5) football.

Tamer : Wonderful !

Tarek : I think he will be a great footballer.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

I have got many friends, but Akram is my best friend. He has got short, dark straight hair. He lives in Qalyoubia Governorate with his mum,

dad and two sisters. His favourite subject is history because he loves learning about the past. He also likes maths and science. He doesn't like art because he isn't good at drawing or painting. His favourite sport is swimming. He goes swimming twice a week.

He is a big fan of Liverpool Sports Club and Mohamed Salah. He always watches football matches on TV and sometimes goes to the stadium. In the stadium, he watches matches of our national team.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.

2. How often does Akram go swimming ?

3. Why do you think Akram sometimes goes to the stadium ?

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. Akram has got short, straight hair.

a. dark b. light c. red d. brown

5. The underlined pronoun "He" refers to

a. Mohammed Salah b. Akram
c. Akram's father d. Akram's friend

6. The underlined word "twice" means

a. three times b. two times c. four times d. one time

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. People who like something or admire someone are called

a. fans b. pans c. vans d. hats

2. **SB** Mohamed Salah is a sports

a. moon b. planet c. star d. class

3. He has got a lovely, so all people like him.

a. smile b. problem c. moon d. course

4. At school, we play football in the
 a. hall b. playground c. gym d. office
5. I admire the of Dr Magdi Yacoub.
 a. person b. personality c. personal d. personally
6. Ayman has a smartphone.
 a. gets b. getting c. got d. get
7. I always help my sister things at home.
 a. ride b. do c. eat d. drive
8. Leen likes to her father.
 a. talk b. talks c. talking d. talked
9. Do they making noise in class ?
 a. enjoy b. to enjoy c. enjoys d. enjoyed
10. The first on Monday morning is science.
 a. glass b. lesson c. classroom d. bottle

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Has they got their presents ? (.....)
2. I like English but maths. (.....)
3. SE Does he like play basketball ? (.....)
4. She is strong. She can't jump high. (.....)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on : محباب صديقي

"Your best friend"

Quiz

on units 1,2&3

أختبار تراكمي على الوحدات (١، ٢، ٣)

- يقوم المعلم باختيار اختبار مصغر (واحد) من (A) or (B) لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمعلومات الواردة في الوحدات

Model A

* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :



- stories are exciting and dangerous.
a. Comedy b. Romantic c. Adventure d. Funny
- Gymnastics you to stay strong.
a. to help b. help c. helping d. helps
- She curly hair.
a. is b. does c. has d. have
- People who can't walk can use a to travel around.
a. stick b. wheelchair c. wheel d. ship
- Some children to school in Egypt.
a. recycle b. swim c. cycle d. follow

Model B

* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :



- They like in the sea .
a. swam b. swims c. swim d. swimming
- This mobile is
a. Dina's b. Dinas' c. Dina d. Dinas
- A person is happy to do something dangerous.
a. strange b. brave c. frightened d. funny
- Doing work for no money is a/an work.
a. bad b. daily c. adventure d. voluntary
- Egypt is a big in Africa.
a. town b. village c. country d. city

Review A

SB pages 32 & 33 WB pages 93 & 94



Reading

on Lesson 1 SB page 32

My family By Lina

1 B

This is my aunt. Her name's Amal. She's my mum's sister. She's got long, dark curly⁽¹⁾ hair and she's got glasses. Aunt Amal is very kind.



2 D

This is my uncle. His name's Nader and he's got short, dark hair. Uncle Nader is very tall ! He's a teacher⁽²⁾ and he's very clever.



3 A

Aunt Amal and Uncle Nader have got two children - a son⁽³⁾ and a daughter⁽⁴⁾. They're my cousins. Their names are Fares and Malak. This is Fares. He's five. He's got short, curly hair and he's very friendly⁽⁵⁾.



4 C

Malak is two. She's got short, straight⁽⁶⁾ hair. She likes playing with her toys⁽⁷⁾. She usually has a big smile⁽⁸⁾. I think she's very funny⁽⁹⁾.



Check Vocabulary

(1) مدعد (غير مستقيم)	(2) مدرس	(3) ابن	(4) ابنة	(5) ودود
(6) مستقيم	(7) ألعاب أطفال	(8) ابتسامة	(9) مضحك	

Listening

on Lesson 2 SB page 33



Woman : What time do you get up, Shady ?

Shady : I usually get up at quarter^{١٥} to seven on a school day.

Woman : How do you travel to school ?

Shady : I always walk^{٢٠} to school with my brother. We never go by car.

Woman : Do you like school ?

Shady : Yes, I do! My lessons are interesting^{٢٥} and I see my friends. I always sit next to my best friend, Hassan, in lessons.

Woman : And what do you do after school ?

Shady : I sometimes play sport^{٣٠}. On Mondays, I play football, and on Wednesdays, I go swimming.

Woman : Do you have any other hobbies^{٣٥} ? Do you play chess^{٤٠} ?

Shady : No! I never play chess. I don't like it. But I often listen to music^{٤٥} or watch TV.



Check Vocabulary

١٥ ربع ٢٠ مشي ٢٥ مثير ٣٠ رياضة ٣٥ هوايات ٤٠ لعبة الشطرنج ٤٥ موسيقى

• WB page 93



Aya: Hi, my name's Aya. My friends have got long, straight hair but I've got short, curly hair. We go to a girls' school in Cairo. My favourite school subject^{١٠} is art. I love drawing^{١٥}. I'm not very good at it, but I want to be! We have art at quarter to eleven, after maths and before English. I've got one brother and one sister. My brother is very friendly and my sister is very clever^{٢٠}.



Check Vocabulary

١٠ مادة دراسية ١٥ الرسم ٢٠ ذكي / فاهم

Reading

WB page 93

(a) twins



(b) Huda



(c) Amal



(d) Lina



Teacher : OK children. It's time to go home. I've got four school bags here.

Magda : Huda's bag has got flowers on it. That's her bag there.

Maya : That's Amal's bag. It has got birds on it.

Nevine : Lina's bag is red. It hasn't got any pictures on it.

Teacher : Good, but I've now got one bag with tennis balls on it. Is it your bag, Magda?

Magda : No, it isn't my bag. I think it's one of the twins' bags.

Teacher : Yes, but which twin, Azza or Dalia?

Listening

WB page 94

Narrator 1

Boy 1 : I often go to the cinema with my uncle.

Narrator 2

Girl 1 : Do you like playing chess?

Narrator 3

Girl 1 : I have got a long, white coat⁽¹⁾.

Narrator 4

Boy 1 : After break, we go to the hall⁽²⁾.

Narrator 5

Girl 1 : My uncle has got glasses⁽³⁾ and a beard⁽⁴⁾.

Check Vocabulary

(1) coat / ثوب (2) hall / قاعة (3) glasses / نظارة (4) beard / لحية

If you got ● , you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد ،
قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في نهاية كل وحدة.



Mini-Test on

Unit 1

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- is your grandfather's father.
a. Grandchild b. Grandfather
c. Great-grandfather d. Father
- She eats food so that she can stay strong.
a. unhealthy b. healthy c. bad d. happy
- He usually plays basketball Fridays.
a. at b. on c. in d. about
- I in Aswan with my family.
a. live b. lives c. living d. is lived
- He like walking to school. He prefers to go by bus.
a. isn't b. doesn't c. wasn't d. aren't
- Teachers should between their work at school and their lives at home.
a. balance b. block c. practise d. dive
- is an interesting sport.
a. Mathematics b. Physics
c. Gymnastics d. Painting

- A/An is a room at the top of a house.
a. attic b. cinema c. park d. aisle
- "....." is the opposite of "female".
a. Mail b. Meal c. Male d. Mile
- The girl is not a/ an, she has a father and a mother.
a. exciting b. difficult
c. orphan d. lazy

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

- They are twins. Them mother is a doctor. (.....)
- Lamia often listening to her best friend. (.....)
- What's he name ? - Ali. (.....)
- He is call Omar. (.....)

3. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"Your family"

.....

.....

.....

.....

GENERAL Revision

Based on Units 1, 2 & 3

مراجعة عامة على الوحدات 1، 2 و 3



If you got ● , you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد ،
قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في نهاية كل وحدة.

Mini-Test on

Unit 2

1. Complete the following dialogue :

They're talking about school subjects.

A : Hi, Ali

B : Hi, Ahmed.

A : What's your favourite (1) of the week ?

B : It (2) Monday.

A : Why ?

B : (3) I have art and P.E.

A : What's your favourite subject ?

B : Science.

A : (4) do you have it ?

B : I have science (5) Tuesday.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My favourite subject is I love acting.

- a. economics b. drama
c. science d. maths

2. Amir basketball after school.

- a. often plays b. often play
c. often playing d. is often playing

3. I breakfast at 7 o'clock every morning.

- a. has b. having c. have d. am having

4. Do you want to join the this week ?

- a. books's club b. books' club
c. book club d. book club's

5. On a holiday, I always go to the beach.

- a. kind b. typical c. bad d. silly

6. It's healthy and cheap to to school.

- a. cycle b. recycle c. reread d. reuse

7. A canoe is a long, narrow

- a. box b. boat c. ball d. bell

8. is time to rest.

- a. Plan b. Broke c. Break d. Bread

9. A snowmobile can travel on

- a. water b. air c. snow d. rail

10. I can put my school tools in a pencil

- a. cup b. cube c. case d. bin

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Ali usually arrives in school at 8 : 00. (.....)

2. What is good at football ? – Baher. (.....)

3. We always go to the beach in winter. (.....)

4. It's Judys' pen. (.....)

If you got ● , you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد .
قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في نهاية كل وحدة.



Mini-Test on

Unit 3

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. She thinks carefully. She is
a. scary b. sensible c. poor d. weak
2. Mohammed Salah has a lot of
a. fans b. fins c. fats d. pans
3. Ramadan Sobhy can a lot of goals
because he can run fast.
a. give b. go c. point d. score
4. Most people coming from Denmark and Sweden
have hair.
a. dark b. black c. blond d. blue
5. The hair that grows above a man's top lip is
called
a. shoulder b. moustache
c. beard d. chin
6. A big on your face can make people
happy.
a. smell b. smile c. snack d. silk
7. A / An is a chair with wheels for people
who cannot walk.
a. armchair b. sofa
c. wheelchair d. deck chair

8. He lives in England. He speak English.

- a. wasn't b. don't c. can d. can't

9. The woman has long hair.

- a. get b. got c. gets d. getting

10. She is very busy. She take any
holidays.

- a. can b. can't c. don't d. could

2. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. He is not clever. He can solve the problem.

(.....)

2. Has you got dark hair ?

(.....)

3. She loves play chess.

(.....)

4. What food does you like ?

(.....)

3. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

" An exciting story you read."

UNIT 4

We're using technology!

SB pages 34-43 WB pages 95-101



Objectives

• Reading :

A text message conversation; a text about hobbies

• Writing :

A paragraph and a poster about online safety

• Listening :

A description of technology in a classroom; a phone call

• Speaking :

Describing the technology in your classroom; a guessing game; giving instructions

• Language :

There is / There are; the present continuous

• Life Skills :

Problem solving; resilience.

العلامة 11 تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب.
العلامة 12 تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدریس.

اسئلة
در وحدة تعلم

كلمة المعلم للامانة اليومية والبحث في نهاية الكتاب.
ملحق (Master your term)

الامانة
الوحدة



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

laptop computer (n)	كمبيوتر محمول	3D printers	الطابعات ثلاثية الأبعاد
picture (n)	صورة طبيعية أو مرسومة	whiteboard (n)	سبورة بيضاء
tablet (n)	كمبيوتر لوحي	classmate (n)	زميل فصل
mobile phone (n)	تليفون محمول	email (n)	رسالة بريد إلكتروني
selfie (n)	صورة فوتوغرافية بالكاميرا الأمامية للتليفون	technology (n)	تكنولوجيا
mouse (n)	فأرة	phone charger (n)	شاحن الهاتف
printer (n)	الطابعة	MP3 player (n)	مشغل الأغاني

- تنويه** • **Key Vocabulary** هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
Master your Vocabulary يقضي على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (المزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 1

SB pages 34 & 35

WB page 95

print (ed) (v)	يطبع (ورق)	charge (d) (v)	يشحن (كهربائياً)
----------------	------------	----------------	------------------

Lesson 2

SB pages 36 & 37

WB page 96

text message (n)	رسالة نصية	great (adj)	رائع / عظيم
moment (n)	لحظة	video call (n)	مكالمة مرئية بالفيديو
paper (n)	ورق	icon (n)	أيقونة / رمز
plastic model (n)	نموذج بلاستيكي	click (ed) = tap (ped) (v)	ينقر / يضغط
design (ed) (v)	يصمم / يرسم تصميم		

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	المضارع	Past	الماضي	P.P.	التصريف الثالث
know	يعرف	knew		known	
mean	يعني / يقصد	meant		meant	

Words and Opposites

Word الكلمة	Opposite العكس	كلمات وعكسها
new جديد	old قديم	
online متصل بالإنترنت	offline غير متصل بالإنترنت	
necessary ضروري	unnecessary غير ضروري	

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

charge	increase the power of a battery	يشحن (كهربائياً)
click	press a mouse or icon to make something happen on a computer	ينقر / يضغط
email	a letter or message you send on a computer	رسالة بريد إلكتروني
icon	a small picture on a computer screen	أيقونة / رمز
laptop computer	a small, light computer that you can carry easily	كمبيوتر محمول
mobile phone	a small phone that you can carry with you	تليفون محمول
mouse	an object you move so that you can read and write on a computer screen	فأرة
MP3 player	a machine that can play music	مشغل موسيقى
online	using the internet	متصل بالإنترنت
phone charger	you use a phone charger to increase the battery power of a mobile phone	شاحن (تليفون محمول)
printer	a machine that can print documents from a computer	طابعة
selfie	a photo you take of yourself	صورة فوتوغرافية بالكاميرا الأمامية للتليفون
tap	touch quickly with your finger	ينقر / يضغط
text message	sentences you write on a mobile phone	رسالة نصية
tablet	a flat, mobile computer that is smaller than a laptop computer	كمبيوتر لوحى
video call	a way to talk to and see people online	مكالمة بالفيديو
website	an internet page with information about something	موقع على الإنترنت

whiteboard

a classroom board that is sometimes connected to a computer

سبورة بيضاء

3D printer

a machine that can print documents in 3D from a computer

طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد

II Reading and Listening

Reading

on Lesson 1 SB page 34

I am Ziad and this is a **picture**⁽¹⁾ of my classroom.

We often use tablets in school. There are two

laptop⁽²⁾ computers in the classroom, too. One

laptop has got a **mouse**⁽³⁾. I don't know why

it's called a mouse. Do you know? And there's

a **printer**⁽⁴⁾, too. My friend, Omar, is printing his

homework. I have got a **mobile phone**⁽⁵⁾ but it's in

my bag - we don't use our phones in the classroom. Mr Osman has got

a phone on his desk. He's **charging**⁽⁶⁾ his phone with a phone **charger**⁽⁷⁾.

And he's got a new MP3 player, it's small and blue. Can you see it?



Check Vocabulary

صورة (1) | كمبيوتر محمول (2) | شاشة الكمبيوتر (3) | طابعة (4) | هاتف محمول (5) | يشحن (6) | شاحن (7)

Listening

on Lesson 1 SB page 35



There's a laptop computer on the table. Under the table, there's a printer. There isn't an MP3 player but there are two mobile phones near the laptop. The laptop has got a mouse.

Reading

on Lesson 2 SB page 36

Adam : Hi, Granddad. It's Adam. What are you doing ?

Granddad : I'm playing chess **online**⁽¹⁾. I'm winning at the moment !

Adam : Are you using your new laptop ?

Granddad : Yes, it's quite **easy to use**⁽²⁾. What are you doing ?

Adam : I'm **doing my computer studies homework**⁽³⁾. I'm looking at **websites**⁽⁴⁾ for **information**⁽⁵⁾ about **3D printers**⁽⁶⁾.

Granddad : What are your mum and Alia doing ?

Adam : They're **taking selfies**⁽⁷⁾. I'm sending you one of their photos now.

Granddad : Oh yes ! That's a great photo.



Check Vocabulary

مواقع على الإنترنت (4)	يؤدي واجب مادة الحاسب الآلي (3)	سهل الاستخدام (2)	شغل بال (إلكتروني) (1)
يلتقط صور بالكاميرا الأمامية (7)	مطبعة ثلاثية الأبعاد (6)	معلومات (5)	

Videoscript

Lesson 2 SB page 36

Narrator : We use technology every day. **Modern technology**⁽¹⁾ is very different from technology in the past. **The ancient Egyptians**⁽²⁾ used their own **forms**⁽³⁾ of technology to do a lot of different things. For example, ancient Egypt was the first **civilization**⁽⁴⁾ to use **calendars**⁽⁵⁾. This is a calendar in the **Temple of Karnak**⁽⁶⁾ in Luxor. Today, we can use our phones to find our way. The ancient Egyptians used **astronomy**⁽⁷⁾ to find their way in the desert and at sea. Astronomy is the study of stars and planets. How do you tell the time ? Have you got a phone ... or a watch ? The ancient Egyptians had the first clocks. They were called **sundials**⁽⁸⁾, like this one in Alexandria.

Check Vocabulary

ساعة شمسية (8)	علم الفلك (7)	معبد الكرنك (6)	تقويم (1)	حضارة (4)	أشكال (3)	قضاء المصريين (2)	التكنولوجيا الحديثة (1)
----------------	---------------	-----------------	-----------	-----------	-----------	-------------------	-------------------------

They used the sun to tell the time. **Hieroglyphics**⁽¹⁰⁾ is the oldest writing in the world. The ancient Egyptians used hieroglyphics to **communicate**⁽¹⁰⁾.

And of course, the ancient Egyptians used a **plant**⁽¹¹⁾ called **papyrus**⁽¹²⁾ to make the first kind of paper.

This is papyrus. It **grows**⁽¹³⁾ along the River Nile. Today, we use different technology to the ancient Egyptians. This woman is writing a text message on her phone. And this man is writing a story. He is not using paper at all!

Today, we have calendars on our phones, computers and tablets. Today's technology is different, but we can thank the ancient Egyptians for starting the **ideas**⁽¹⁴⁾ for our technology too.

Check Vocabulary

• أفكار (14) • ينمو (13) • نبات البردي (12) • نبات (11) • يتواصل (10) • اللغة الهيروغليفية

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 tap / click

• tap يلمس برفق على سطح شاشة محددًا صوت أحيانًا [ينقر باللمس]

ex.: - Leen tapped on her mobile screen to make a call.

• click يضغط على زر في فأرة أو لوحة مفاتيح.

ex.: - He clicked on the file icon to open it.

2 the same / similar

• the same نفس الشيء «دون اختلاف كبير»

ex.: - He has the same features of his father.

• similar (to) متشابه في بعض الصفات

ex.: - Amr is similar to Ali in some points.

3 Each

يستخدم بعدها اسم مفرد وتعني (كل على حدة)

ex.: - Each laptop has got a mouse.

4 Online

متصل بالإنترنت

ex.: - There are many online shops on the internet. نستخدم كلمة قبل الاسم

- Grandfather is playing chess online. نستخدم كظرف بعد الفعل

5 look

- look at

ex.:- I'm looking at websites for information about 3D printers.

ينظر إلى

- look for

ex.:- She is looking for a new pair of shoes.

يبحث عن

- look after

ex.:- I look after my baby sister while mother is out.

يراقب

- look up

يبحث عن معلومة أو كلمة في قاموس

ex.:- I use my dictionary to look up new words.

- look out for

يختر من

ex.:- Divers should look out for dangerous sharks.

6 a mouse – mouses – mice

- a mouse

فأر - فأرة (الكمبيوتر)

ex.:- There is a mouse in the attic.

- My laptop has got a mouse.

- mouses

جمع كلمة mouse عندما نقصد فأرات الكمبيوتر

ex.:- I have two mouses for my computer.

- mice

فأران (جمع غير منتظم)

ex.:- There are two mice in the kitchen.

Important expressions & prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

make chess pieces

يصنع قطع الشطرنج

take a selfie

يلتقط صورة بالكاميرا الأمامية

charge ... with

يشحن ... باستخدام

make a video call

تجري مكالمة فيديو

play ... online

يلعب ... متصلاً بالإنترنت

send a text message

يرسل رسالة نصية

at the moment

في هذه اللحظة

do computer studies homework

يؤدي واجب مادة الحاسب الآلي

easy to use

سهل الاستخدام

design an icon for

يصمم أيقونة لـ

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

- A machine that can play music is called a / an
a. MP3 player b. printer c. watch d. clock
- If you want to increase the battery of your mobile with electricity, you can use a
a. marker b. printer c. charger d. mouse
- You can use the to click on different icons on the computer.
a. mouse b. printer c. charger d. tablet
- Our teacher asked us to write letters on the using markers.
a. skateboard b. whiteboard c. board game d. blackboard
- A is a photo you take of yourself.
a. selfie b. portrait c. picture d. drawing

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

- WB** She's you a photo now. (امتحان مجمع بنى سويف - ناصر ٢٠٢١)
a. writing b. sending c. doing d. making
- SB** I enjoy playing online. (South Giza 2020)
a. chips b. chance c. cheese d. chess
- WB** on the icon on your laptop. (El Fashn-Beni Suef 2020)
a. Click b. Write c. Give d. Turn
- WB** I'd like to a selfie in front of the river.
a. make b. give c. pick d. take

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

- In 1992 , a computer engineer sent the world's first message.
a. test b. taxes c. text d. toast
- When the battery of the mobile is low, you can it.
a. play b. break c. charge d. drive

12. When you want to send someone a message on a computer, send
a / an
a. letter b. email c. paragraph d. story

➤ Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. If you want to call someone and see him live مباشر, you can a video call.
a. put b. make c. give d. take
14. I'm my computer studies homework now.
a. making b. giving c. doing d. taking
15. I'm looking at websites information about 3D printers.
a. at b. about c. for d. with

Language

There is

يوجد (للمفرد)

There are

يوجد (للمجمع)



There is

+

singular noun

اسم مفرد (يعد / لا يعد)

ex. There is a printer.

**Affirmative
Statements**

الجملة الخبرية
المثبتة

There are

+

plural noun

اسم جمع

ex. There are two laptops.

**There is not
(isn't)**

ex. There isn't a charger.

**Negative
statements**

الجملة الخبرية
المنفية

**There are not
(aren't)**

ex. There aren't any tablets.

Is there

اسم مفرد ?

Interrogativeصيغة
الاستفهام**Are there**

اسم جمع ?

ex. Is there an MP3 player ?

- Yes, there is.
- No, there isn't.

ex. Are there any mobile phones ?

- Yes, there are.
- No, there aren't.

Note the following :**لاحظ أن :****some** + اسم لا يعد /
بعض اسم جمع

تستخدم في الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

There is some milk in the bottle.

There are some pencils in my pencil case.

تستخدم أيضًا some عند التعبير عن العرض والطلب

• Would you like some coffee ? (عرض)

• Can I have some tea ? (طلب)

any + اسم لا يعد /
أي اسم جمع

تستخدم في الجمل الخبرية المنفية وصيغة الاستفهام بمعنى هل

There isn't any ink in my pen.

There aren't any cakes in the fridge.

Is there any ink in your pen ?

Are there any cakes in the fridge ?

تستخدم (an) قبل كلمة MP3 player وليس (a) لأنها تبدأ بصوت متحرك.

Is there an MP3 player ?

(SB page 35)

Exercises on Language**1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة SB, WB and Previous Exams

(El Fashn-Beni Suf 2020)

1. there any water in the fridge ?

- a. Are b. Does c. Aren't d. Is

2. There _____ a lot of milk in the fridge. (Nasser-Bent Suef 2020)
 a. are b. weren't c. aren't d. is
3. There _____ any meat in the dish. (Rafah-North Sinai 2020)
 a. aren't b. is c. isn't d. are
4. **SB** There _____ any tablets.
 a. is b. are c. aren't d. isn't
5. **SB** There are some laptops and there _____ a whiteboard.
 a. are b. aren't c. do d. is
6. **WB** Are there _____ printers? (امتحان مجمع الشرقية - غرب الزقازيق)
 a. some b. any c. much d. little

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. There _____ more women than men in the office.
 a. is b. isn't c. are d. am
8. Is there an umbrella for me ? - No, there _____.
 a. aren't b. is c. are d. isn't
9. _____ there any pens with you, Mona ?
 a. Is b. Are c. Do d. was
10. There are _____ books in my bag.
 a. any b. much c. some d. little

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

- SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة
1. There are any books on the shelf. (Hehia-Sharkia 2020) (.....)
2. **WB** Is there a teacher ? - Yes, there are. (.....)
3. **WB** There aren't some computers. (Wasat Alex 2020) (.....)
4. **SB** There aren't a charger. (.....)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

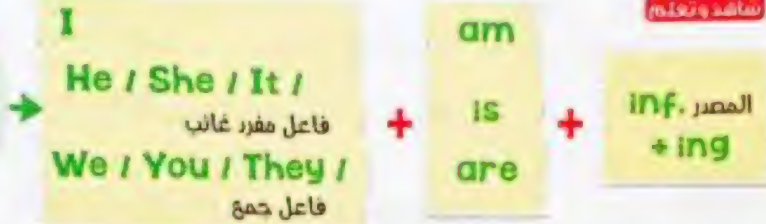
5. Are their any mobile phones ? (.....)
6. Is there any computers in the classroom ? (.....)

The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

Formation التكوين

Affirmative Statements

الجملة الخبرية
المثبتة



- ex. - I'm watching TV now.
- Look! They are playing tennis.
- He's studying for his exams at the moment.

Usage الاستخدام

- ◀ يعبر هذا الزمن عن حدث يقع أثناء التحدث (لحظة الكلام).
ex.: - They are designing a new library now.
- He is reading a book at present.
◀ يستخدم هذا الزمن أيضًا لوصف أحداث مخطط لها في المستقبل.
ex.: - We are going to Aswan tomorrow.
- They are having a party tonight.

ملاحظات على إضافة (ing) للفعل

- ◀ عندما ينتهي الفعل بحرف الـ (e) غير منطوق (قبلة حرف ساكن) تحذف (e) قبل إضافة (ing) أما إذا كان حرف (e) منطوقًا لا تحذف ويضاف (ing).

write



writing

practise



practising

- ◀ إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن مسبقًا بحرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير قبل إضافة (ing) (بشرط أن يكون الفعل مكون من مقطع واحد)

swim



swimming

sit



sitting

اللفظ انه لا يضاعف الحرف الأخير إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بحرف ساكن مسبوق بحرفين متحركين.

feed



feeding

wait



waiting

إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (ie) تحول إلى (y) قبل إضافة (ing).

lie



lying

die



dying

كلمات دالة (Key words) : غالباً تأتي مع الزمن :

now	الآن	Take care !	احذر !	at the moment	في تلك اللحظة
Look !	انظر !	still	مازال	at present	في الوقت الحاضر
Listen !	انصت !	tonight	في هذه الليلة	Look out ! / Watch out !	احترس !

ex.: - Listen! She's singing.

- He is working now.

Remember

تذكر

Prepositions of place

حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان



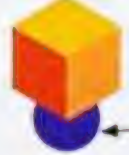
next to
بجانب



behind
خلف



in front of
أمام



under
تحت



near
بالقرب من

Exercises

on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. My friend and I chess now.

a. are playing b. am playing c. played

(Rasheed - Behelra 2020)

d. plays

2. Ali his English book now.

a. reads b. read c. is reading

(Quesna - Menofia 2020)

d. reading

3. **WB** Mum and my sister a cake.
 a. making b. are making c. is making d. makes
4. **SB** I am you a photo.
 a. sent b. sends c. send d. sending
5. **SB** I'm playing chess online. I'm at the moment.
 a. win b. wins c. winning d. won

(امتحان مجمع الجيزة - شمال الجيزة ٢٠٢١)

➤ **El-Moasser Exercises** تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. The dog is the tree. I can't see its head.
 a. next b. under c. behind d. front of
7. They taking selfies now.
 a. is b. was c. am d. are
8. Look! Youssef is the ball.
 a. kicking b. kicks c. kick d. kicked
9. My uncle's house is in of my house.
 a. next b. front c. back d. behind
10. Watch out! A car
 a. comes b. coming c. came d. is coming

2. **Read and correct the underlined words :**

➤ **SB , WB and Previous Exams** تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. My father sleeps at the moment. (North Giza 2020) (.....)
2. **WB** There is an MP3 player behind to the laptop. (.....)
3. Omar prints his homework now. (Aswan 2020) (.....)
4. **SB** He is charged his phone with a phone charger. (.....)

➤ **El-Moasser Exercises** تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

5. They is making chess pieces. (.....)
6. I drink tea at the moment. (.....)
7. The whiteboard is next up the students' desks. (.....)

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع معارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 1 SB page 34 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ١٧١ ثم قم بالتدرب على اجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions :

- **Giving the main idea** إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

1. What is the main idea of the passage ?

- Using technology at classroom.

- **Extracting information** استخراج المعلومات

2. Who is printing his homework ?

- **Understanding reference** فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

3. What does the pronoun "He" in the text refer to ?

2. Writing Corner

معاراة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

1. We often use tablets in schools. ١. غالباً ما نستخدم الكمبيوتر اللوحي في المدارس.

2. I use the printer to print my homework. ٢. أستخدم الطابعة في طباعة واجبي المنزلي.

3. I look at websites for information. ٣. أبحث عن المعلومات على الإنترنت.

4. My father likes playing chess online. ٤. أبي يحب لعب الشطرنج عبر الإنترنت.

B. Building sentences

⊙ Read and complete :

any - next - taking - is - some - are

1. There a printer.
2. There aren't mobile phones.
3. She's a selfie at the moment.
4. The tablet is to the printer.
5. There are desks.

تدرب

بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات
اللغوية الخاصة بالدرس
قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة مقالة إنشائية.

- Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"Using technology"

3. Speaking Corner

معاراة التحدث

Asking and answering questions about your classroom

السؤال والإجابة عن محتويات حجرة الدراسة

- What's in your classroom ? ما الموجود داخل فصلك الدراسي ؟
- There are some laptops and a whiteboard. يوجد بعض أجهزة الكمبيوتر المحمولة وسبورة بيضاء.
- There aren't any tablets. لا يوجد أى أجهزة لوحية.

A week is enough

الامتحان بين يديك

مراجعة المنهج بالكامل والتمكن منه فى أسبوع واحد فقط.

كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية



General Exercises

On

LESSONS

1 & 2

• Understand

• Apply

• Create



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (تصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Where is Ziad ? - He is in his
 a. playground b. classroom c. car d. homework
2. How many laptops are there in the classroom ?
 a. 3 b. 4 c. 2 d. 5
3. There is one in the classroom .
 a. laptop b. MP3 player c. tablet d. printer
4. Who is printing his homework ?
 a. Omar b. Ziad c. Tarek d. Ali

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ali is busy using his mobile.

Marwa : I see you are busy.

Ali : Yes, I am very busy.

Marwa : What are you (1) ?

Ali : I am using my (2)

Marwa : Why ?

Ali : To (3) an email.

Marwa : Is your mobile new ?

Ali : Yes, it is.

Marwa : Can you (4) a selfie ?

Ali : Yes, I will send you one of my (5)

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. **SB** There aren't pencil cases with him.
 a. some b. any c. no d. nobody
2. I bought a new that can play music easily.
 a. printer b. charger c. MP3 player d. mouse

3. Ayman is his laptop in his office now.
a. use b. uses c. using d. used
4. What game are you playing ?
a. line b. online c. in line d. at line
5. A/ An is a small picture on a computer screen.
a. icon b. item c. bit d. mouse
6. Can you what these words mean?
a. guess b. take c. make d. use
7. They writing a new story at the moment.
a. are b. is c. isn't d. have
8. If you want to leave a game on the computer, twice on the mouse.
a. trick b. click c. lick d. hit
9. A : Is the boy his homework at the moment ?
B Yes, he is.
a. printing b. charging c. using d. making
10. A message is a message which someone writes on a phone.
a. video b. text c. audio d. life

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Are there any useful information on the website ? (.....)
2. WB Is there any tablets ? (.....)
3. SB Are there some mobile phones ? (.....)
4. I'm look at websites on the internet. (.....)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Technology"

نقاط منه في نهاية الكتاب



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

school uniform (n)	زى مدرسى موحّد	wave (d) (v)	يلوح بيده
conversation (n)	محادثة	nature (n)	الطبيعة
insects (n)	حشرات	eagle (n)	نسر
put up (phrv)	يرفع	mime (d) (v)	يقلد / يومي
action (n)	حدث / فعل	technology (n)	تكنولوجيا

تنويه • **Key Vocabulary** هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (المزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 3

SB pages 38 & 39

WB page 97

email (n)	رسالة بريد إلكتروني	sunny (adj)	مشمس
smile (d) (v), (n)	يتسّم / ابتسامة	programme (n)	برنامج

Lesson 4

SB page 40

WB page 98

spelling (n)	الهجاء	advice (n)	نصيحة
lunchtime (n)	وقت الغذاء	kind (n)	نوع
around (prep)	حول	grammar mistakes (n)	أخطاء القواعد اللغوية

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
spend يقضى / ينفق	spent	spent
bring يحضر	brought	brought
wear يرتدي	wore	worn

Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite العكس
similar (to) مشابه (إلى)	different (from) مختلف (عن)
send يرسل	receive يستقبل

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

eagle	a large bird that can fly high and see very well	نسر
nature	the plants, animals, land, sea, etc. around us	الطبيعة

II Listening and Reading

Listening

• on Lesson 3 SB page 38



Listen to the conversation between two sisters. What is Randa doing ?

Randa : Hi, Sherifa, it's Randa.

Sherifa : Oh, hello Randa. Where are you ? Are you at home ?

Randa : Yes, and Uncle Yasser's here with our cousins Ola, Reem and Samira.

Sherifa : What's Mum doing ?

Randa : She's looking at a **website**⁽¹⁾. She wants to **make a cake**⁽²⁾.

Sherifa : Yum! Mum makes the best cakes. Is she using the tablet ?

Randa : No, she isn't. She's using the laptop. Uncle Yasser's using the tablet. He's writing an email.

Sherifa : Is grandmother watching TV ?

Randa : Yes, she is. It's her favourite programme on now.

Sherifa : Of course. What are Ola and Samira doing ?

Randa : They're taking selfies in the garden.

Sherifa : Again ? They're always taking selfies !



Check Vocabulary

بصنع كيك / تورتة (2) موقع على الإنترنت (1)

- Randa** : I know. Reem isn't taking a selfie; she's listening to music on her MP3 player.
- Sherifa** : She's a good dancer⁽³⁾! What are you doing, Randa?
- Randa** : I'm talking to⁽⁴⁾ you!
- Sherifa** : Oh yes!

Check Vocabulary

- يحدث إلى (4) راقصة (3)

Reading

on Lesson 3 SB page 39

Soha is not making a video call⁽¹⁾ but she is talking to her friend. Amira is not using any technology⁽²⁾.

Fatma has got long, curly hair⁽³⁾.

She is writing. Hala is using her mobile phone⁽⁴⁾ to send a text message. Leila is not using a mobile phone. She is using a tablet. Mona is smiling at her phone! She is taking a selfie⁽⁵⁾.



Check Vocabulary

- يطلق صورة بالكاميرا الذاتية للهاتف (5) هاتف محمول (4) شعر مجعد (3) تكنولوجيا (2) يجري مكالمة فيديو (1)

on Lesson 4 SB page 40

I love technology⁽¹⁾! My favourite hobby is playing video games. I usually play them on my laptop⁽²⁾, but sometimes I play them on my mobile phone.

Can you guess⁽³⁾ my favourite⁽⁴⁾ lesson at school? Yes, it is computer studies! At break and lunchtime⁽⁵⁾ I stay in the classroom and I look at video game⁽⁶⁾ websites on my phone.

Wael, age 12



Check Vocabulary

- لعبة فيديو (6) وقت الغذاء (5) مفضل (4) يظن (3) كمبيوتر محمول (2) تكنولوجيا (1)

on Lesson 4 SB page 40

I love nature ⁽¹⁾. I like walking and watching the trees, animals ⁽²⁾, flowers and insects ⁽³⁾ all around us. I don't like being in the house; I like being in the garden ⁽⁴⁾ and looking at the sky. At school, I always go outside ⁽⁵⁾ at break. I go when it's very hot or cold! I've got a mobile phone. I don't send text messages or make video calls on my phone, but I take photos of flowers.

Mazin, age 13



Check Vocabulary

(1) طبيعة (2) حيوانات (3) حشرات (4) حديقة (5) بالخارج

on Lesson 4 WB page 98

In this picture, there is a big park. There are lots of flowers and insects and there is a big tree. A girl is sitting under the tree. Her mother is taking a photo of her. Her father is not sitting under the tree. He is flying a kite! The girl's brothers are playing tennis.



Listening

on Lesson 3 WB page 97

Judy : Hi, Leila. Where are you ?

Leila : Hi, Judy. I'm in the park with my family.

Judy : What are you doing there ?

Leila : I'm sitting under a tree. It's very sunny.

Judy : Are your brothers sitting, too ?

Leila : No, they aren't. They're playing football.

Judy : Is your dad playing football with them ?

Leila : No, he isn't. He's not here. He's working today.
But my Uncle Hassan is playing football!



Judy : What's your mother doing ?

Leila : Er, wait ... here she is. She's bringing me a drink of water.
Thanks, Mum!



General Notes on Reading and Listening

1 spend

* spend + وقت + (inf. + ing)

بمعنى يقضى وقت

ex.: I spend the morning reading a story.

* spend + مال on (noun اسم / inf. + ing)

بمعنى ينفق مالا على

ex.: I spend my pocket money جيب مصروف on sweets.

2 kind

* kind (n)

نوع

ex.: You can see lots of different kinds of birds in the park.

* kind (adj)

طيب / عطوف

ex.: Mr Ahmed is a kind person.

3 There / Their

* There is/are ...

يوجد

ex.: - There is a girl in the playground.

* there

هناك

ex.: - Who is over there ?

* Their

صفة ملكية من الضمير They

ex.: - Their father is a gymnast.

4 What do you think of ?

تستخدم للسؤال عن الرأي

ex.: - What do you think of Wael and Mazin ?

5 break

* break - broke - broken (v)

يكسر

ex.: - Don't break your pencil.

* break (n)

فسحة

ex.: - At break, we play video games.

(الاحظ أنه يسبقها حرف الجر at)

Important expressions & prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

write with	يكتب ... باستخدام	aged 13	عمره ١٣ عام
make questions	يكون أسئلة	do a hobby	يمارس هواية
put my hand up	أرفع يدي	near my house	بالقرب من منزلي
have to + inf.	يُضطر إلى	take notes	يدون ملاحظات
take photos of	يلتقط صور لـ	on {	على الكمبيوتر
			المحمول (الخاص بي)
fly a kite	يطير طائرة ورقية	my laptop	على هاتفي
wear black shoes	يرتدي حذاء أسود	my mobile phone	
		sit under the tree	يجلس تحت الشجرة
		smile at	يبتسم لـ

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

- It's polite to your hands up first when you want to ask a question.
a. make b. give c. put d. take
- We to our friends through the window to say goodbye.
a. gave b. called c. waved d. moved
- A/ An is a large bird that can fly high and see very well.
a. canary b. duck c. eagle d. hen
- means the plants, animals, land, sea, etc. around us.
a. Nature b. Plant c. Information d. Place

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

- Is it good to have a hobby you all the time ? (Baleem-Kafr El Sheikh 2020)
a. make b. do c. give d. take

- SB** Soha isn't making a , but she is talking to her friend.

(امتحان مجمع العربية - غرب المملكة ٢٠٢١)

- a. project b. video call c. selfie d. message
- WB** He is a kite.
a. eating b. sitting c. going d. flying
- WB** He's under the tree.
a. flying b. sitting c. taking d. making

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

9. Life in the city is from life in the country.
a. similar b. different c. easy d. important
10. Pupils should wear their school every school day.
a. form b. books c. uniform d. playground
11. It is always in the summer.
a. rainy b. sunny c. windy d. cold
12. What of stories do you like ?
a. age b. height c. width d. kind

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. Please, me a drink of water.
a. do b. make c. bring d. answer
14. **SB** Mona is at her phone ! She is taking a selfie.
a. smelling b. smiling c. doing d. trying
15. The teacher taught us how to questions.
a. take b. do c. make d. have
16. Soha is talking her phone at the moment.
a. at b. on c. from d. in

III Language

The Present Continuous زمن المضارع المستمر

Formation التكوين

1 Negative Statements

الجملة الخبرية
المنفية

I
He / She / It فاعل مقرر غائب + am + not + (Inf. المصدر + ing)
We / You / They فاعل جمع + is + are

- ex. - She is not teaching at the moment.
- They are not studying now.



(a) Yes/No questions :

(أ) السؤال بـ "هل" :

Am Is Are + I / he / she / it / we / you / they + (inf + ing) ?

فاعل مفرد / فاعل جمع

ex. Is she helping sick people at present ?

- Yes, she is.

- No, she isn't.

Are they growing potatoes now ?

- Yes, they are.

- No, they aren't.

Interrogative

2

صيغة الاستفهام

(ب) السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام :

Question word + am is are + subject + (inf + ing) ?

كلمة الاستفهام الفاعل

ex. Where are you working now ?

- I'm working in Cairo.

What is she studying at the moment ?

- She is studying maths.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. SB What doing at the moment ?

a. they are b. are they c. they were d. were they

2. WB She isn't at the hospital today.

a. work b. working c. works d. worked

3. **SB** Is he an email ?
 a. write b. writes c. writing d. to write
4. **WB** What you doing ? (امتحان مجمع النيا - سال ٢٠٢١) (Belhis- Sharkia 2020)
 a. is b. are c. do d. was

➤ **El-Moasser Exercises** تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

5. Is he glasses ?
 a. wear b. to wear c. wears d. wearing
6. Mera studying English now.
 a. doesn't b. don't c. aren't d. isn't
7. What are your mum and Alia at the moment ?
 a. do b. does c. did d. doing
8. Who is ? -Yasser.
 a. call b. called c. calling d. to call
9. Mona sweeping the floor now ?
 a. Are b. Is c. Does d. Do
10. Hany and his brother walking to school ?
 a. Are b. Is c. Do d. Isn't

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

➤ **SB , WB and Previous Exams** تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. **SB** Are Ali's mother cooking lunch ? (.....)
2. **WB** Do you wearing brown shoes ? (.....)
3. Who are Ali sending a message to ? (Al-Agami-Alex 2020) (.....)
4. Ahmed can't talk to you now because he does his homework. (Al-Amria-Alex 2020) (.....)

➤ **El Moasser Exercises** تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

5. Mona's father are reading a book. (.....)
6. Who are calling Ali on the phone ? (.....)
7. She is still use her old mobile phone. (.....)

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حدة.

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 4 SB page 40 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ١٨٨ ، ١٨٩ ثم قم بالاندرج علي إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions :

- **Critical thinking skill** مهارة التفكير النقدي

1. What do you think of Mazin's hobby ?

I think it's interesting because I love nature, too.

- **Understanding reference** فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

2. What does the pronoun "I" in the text refer to ?

- **Extracting information** استخراج معلومات

3. What does Mazin use his phone for ?

2. Writing Corner

معارف الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

1. I love nature so much.

١. أنا أحب الطبيعة جدًا.

2. I like watching the trees, animals, flowers and insects.

٢. أنا أحب مشاهدة الأشجار والحيوانات والزهور والحشرات.

3. I like being in the garden and looking at the sky.

٣. أنا أحب البقاء في الحديقة والنظر للسماء.

4. I like photos of flowers so much.

٤. أحب صور الزهور جدًا.

Master your Term



اتقن منهجك بالطريقة المناسبة لك.

B. Building sentences

⊙ Read and complete :

isn't - are - making - am - doing

1. I am a video call.
2. What you studying now ?
3. She writing an email.
4. Are you reading a story ? - Yes, I

تدريب
بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات
اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين
قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة مقرة إنشائية.

- Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"Nature"

ممارسة التحدث

3. Speaking Corner

Asking about what someone is doing now :

للسؤال عما يقوم به الشخص الآن :

Are + (you - they) + (inf. + ing) ?

Is + (he / she) + (inf. + ing) ?

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------|
| Is Hala making a video call ? | - هل تجرى هالة مكالمة فيديو ؟ |
| Is he waving ? | - هل هو يشاور / يلوح بيده ؟ |
| Are you sitting next to your best friend ? | - هل تجلس بجوار صديقك المفضل ؟ |
| Are you wearing a school uniform ? | - هل ترتدى الزي المدرسي ؟ |
| Are you using a dictionary ? | - هل تستخدم القاموس ؟ |

General Exercises

On

LESSONS

3 & 4

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Ashraf is telling Ayman about his favourite place.

Ayman : What's your favourite place ?

Ashraf : It is the (1) _____ near my house.

Ayman : What can you (2) _____ in this park ?

Ashraf : I can see (3) _____ of birds.

Ayman : What (4) _____ would you like to see one day ?

Ashraf : An eagle.

Ayman : What else do you do there ?

Ashraf : I (5) _____ my kite.

Ayman : Do you enjoy your time ?

Ashraf : Yes, of course.

2 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Rokaya loves nature. She likes walking and watching the trees, animals, flowers and insects all around her. She doesn't like staying at home, but she loves being in the garden. Her favourite place is the park near her house. She can see lots of different kinds of birds **there**. She has got a mobile phone. She takes lots of photos of flowers and birds, but she doesn't send text messages or make video calls. She **doesn't like** playing video games. Rokaya loves writing articles about nature.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

2. What does Rokaya use her mobile phone for ?

3. How do you know that Rokaya loves nature ?

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. Rokaya doesn't make _____ calls.

a. audio

b. video

c. earphone

d. message

5. The underlined word "**there**" refers to the _____.

a. birds

b. home

c. school

d. park

6. The underlined verb "**doesn't like**" means _____.

a. enjoys

b. hates

c. loves

d. prefers

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I'd like to _____ all day playing video games.
a. send b. spend c. put d. see
2. Parrots and _____ are beautiful birds.
a. elephants b. rats c. monkeys d. eagles
3. When you leave someone, you can _____ goodbye to him.
a. put b. take c. wave d. get
4. Sara and Mohamed _____ putting their hands up to answer the question.
a. is b. was c. are d. am
5. I usually play video games on my _____.
a. book b. laptop c. mouse d. TV
6. Ants are kinds of _____.
a. plants b. insects c. birds d. whales
7. A : What do you _____ of this book ? - B : It's wonderful.
a. sink b. think c. give d. bring
8. I _____ chess online at the moment.
a. plays b. playing c. am playing d. to play
9. What _____ can you give to your friends ?
a. advice b. nature c. lunchtime d. mistake
10. Are you _____ a selfie with your mobile ?
a. to take b. take c. taking d. took

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Listen! Hassan is talks to his father. (_____)
2. Are you listen to music ? (_____)
3. Does she flying the kite ? (_____)
4. They are make a video call. (_____)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on : محبتي للطبيعة

"Which do you like more, nature or technology ?"



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

drink (n)	مشروب	poster (n)	ملصق
world (n)	العالم	boil (ed) (v)	يغلي
font (n)	خط	drop (ped) (v)	يسقط
colourful (adj)	ملون	kettle (n)	غلاية (كهربائية)
popular (adj)	شائع / مشهور	SEND icon (n)	أيقونة الإرسال
instructions (n)	تعليمات	subheading (n)	عنوان فرعي
heading (n)	عنوان فرعي	password (n)	كلمة السر

تذكرة Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.

Master your Vocabulary يقضي على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).

Glossary لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 5

SB page 41

WB page 99

sugar (n)	سكر	message icon (n)	أيقونة الرسائل
imperative (n)	صيغة الأمر	without (prep)	بدون

Lesson 6

SB page 42

WB page 100

secret (adj) (n)	سري / سر	tea bag (n)	كيس شاي
personal (adj)	شخصي	worried (adj)	قلق

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
send يرسل	sent	sent
keep يحافظ	kept	kept

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

boil	if you boil water, it is very hot and bubbles	يغلي
kettle	a machine in the kitchen that makes water hot	غلاية (كهربائية)

turn on	start a machine	يشغل (جهاز) أو آلة
secret	something that only you or a few people know	سر
technology	computers and mobile phones are examples of this	تكنولوجيا
password	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a special word or letters that you write before you can use a computer or website A word or numbers you use to go onto a website 	كلمة سر

II Reading and Listening

Reading

• on Lesson 5 SB page 41

1. How to send a **text message**⁽¹⁾;

First, **tap**⁽²⁾ the messages icon. Tap the name of the **person**⁽³⁾. Write your text message. Then tap the **SEND** icon⁽⁴⁾



2. How to make a video call :

- **Turn** your tablet **on**⁽⁵⁾.
- Tap the name of the person.
- Say Hello!



Check Vocabulary

- {1} رسالة نصية {2} ينقر {3} شخص {4} أيقونة إرسال {5} يشغل جهاز

3. How to make a cup of tea :

- First, put some water in a **kettle**⁽⁶⁾. **Boil**⁽⁷⁾ the water. Put the hot water in a cup with a tea bag. Take out the tea bag. Then, drink the tea.



Check Vocabulary

يغلي (7) غليئة كهربائية (6)

• on Lesson 6 SB page 42

Stay safe when you use technology

- Keep your **password**⁽¹⁾ **secret**⁽²⁾.
- Don't make friends with people you don't know **online**⁽³⁾.
- Don't tell people your **personal information**⁽⁴⁾ (e.g. telephone number).
- Don't send photos to people you don't know.
- Ask for help from a **parent**⁽⁵⁾ or teacher.
- Don't answer a phone call or **video call**⁽⁶⁾ from someone you don't know.
- Tell a parent or teacher if you are **worried about**⁽⁷⁾ something.



Do (✓)	Don't (X)
• Keep your password secret.	• Don't make friends with people you don't know online.

Check Vocabulary

قلق بشأن (7) مشكلة فيديو (6) أحد الوالدين (5) معلومات شخصية (4) متصل بالإنترنت (3) سر (2) كلمة السر (1)

• on Lesson 5 WB page 99

- Mum : Come here, please Ali.
 Ali : Yes, Mum. What is it ?
 Mum : Stop playing on your phone and listen to me. I need you to do something.
 Ali : Yes, OK. What do you want me to do ?
 Mum : Please go to the shop, buy some sugar, take it to your grandmother's house, help her make a cake and then send me a text message when you want to come home.



General Notes on Reading and Listening

► safe / save

* safe (adj)

آمن

ex.: - [S9] To stay safe online, keep your password secret.

* save (d) (v)

يُخَذِّر - يوفِّر / يدخِّر

ex.: - The man saved the child from drowning (الغرق).

- He saves a lot of money to buy a bike.

Important expressions & prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

put in the correct order	ضع في الترتيب الصحيح	give instructions	يعطي تعليمات
make a cup of tea	يُعدُّ كوب من الشاي	tap the send icon	نقر على أيقونة الإرسال
think about	يفكر في (موضوع)	say hello!	قل مرحباً
the rest of	الباقى من	agree with	يتفق مع
stay safe	يبقى آمناً	make friends with	يكون صداقات مع
keep ... password secret	يحافظ على سرية كلمة السر	go onto a website	يدخل على موقع إلكتروني
		go online	يتصل بالإنترنت

look interesting	يبدو رائع / شيق	worried about	قلق بشأن
ask for help	يطلب مساعدة	easy to read	سهل القراءة
answer a phone call from	يرد على مكالمة تليفونية من	take out	يُخرج
		make a poster	يصنع ملصقا

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

- I used the electric to make a cup of tea.
a. cattle b. kettle c. battle d. beetle
- It's important to keep your secret on the internet.
a. passport b. dress c. password d. school
- You should follow your teacher's inside the classroom.
a. rooms b. instructions c. shops d. meals
- If you water, it becomes hot.
a. boil b. dry c. try d. fry
- You shouldn't litter in the park.
a. drop b. fall c. follow d. ride

SB , WB and Previous Exams

- Don't tell people you don't know your telephone number or your information.
a. personal b. sunny c. worried d. colourful
(امتحان جمع كمال - ٢٠٠٠ رفح ٢١)
- Tell your parents or a teacher if you are worried something on the internet.
a. in b. of c. about d. to
- safe online is very important.
a. Staying b. Doing c. Making d. Saying
(Nasser-Bent Surf 2012)
- Don't a phone call or video call from someone you don't know.
a. take b. answer c. ask d. write

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

10. You shouldn't _____ friends with bad people.
a. do b. make c. deal d. give
11. You should _____ your password and personal information a secret.
a. tell b. keep c. say d. deal
12. Our teacher _____ us instructions on how to use the tablet.
a. gave b. played c. asked d. followed

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. How can you _____ your poster easy to read ?
a. take b. make c. break d. give
14. It's dangerous to _____ photos to people you don't know.
a. search b. make c. send d. draw
15. If you have a problem, you can _____ your parents or teacher for help.
a. ask b. answer c. boil d. read
16. When I meet my friends, I _____ hello.
a. make b. tell c. say d. buy

III Language



Imperative

صيغة الأمر

الأمر المثبت
Inf باقى الجملة + مصدر الفعل

- ex. - Keep your password secret.
- Close the window.
- Sit down.

Imperative
صيغة الأمر

الأمر المنفى
Don't + inf مصدر الفعل

- ex. - Don't make noise.
- Don't play in the street.
- Don't go out.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. To make a video call, _____ on your tablet. (Rafah - 21) (اصنعان ميمع الصورة - رافد ٢١)

a. tap b. taps c. tapping d. tapped

2. _____ for help from a parent or a teacher. (Hahim Kafir El Sheikh 2020)

a. Asking b. Asked c. Ask d. Asks

3. _____ make friends with people you don't know online.

a. Didn't b. Do c. Doesn't d. Don't

4. Don't _____ photos to people you don't know.

a. sent b. sending c. send d. sends

5. _____ tell people online your telephone number. (El Maragha - Sombay 2020)

a. Didn't b. Doesn't c. Does d. Don't

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المفاصر

6. Don't _____ food that is unhealthy.

a. eats b. eat c. eating d. ate

7. Don't go out now. _____ here.

a. Waiting b. Wait c. Waits d. Waited

8. Don't _____ the road here. It's dangerous.

a. crosses b. crossing c. cross d. to cross

9. _____ quiet when your father is asleep.

a. Keep b. To keep c. Keeping d. Kept

10. _____ your laptop to make a poster.

a. Used b. Use c. Using d. Uses

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. Didn't waste your time playing games. (Rafah - North Sinai 2020) (_____)

2. First, putting some water in a kettle. (Ain Shams - Cairo 2020) (_____)

3. Doesn't tell people your personal information. (Nasser-Beni Suef 2020) (_____)

4. Keeps your password secret. (East Tanta - Gharbia 2020) (_____)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

5. Went to the ticket office to buy another ticket.
6. It is hot. Opening the window, please.
7. Don't drank water from the canal.

(.....)
(.....)
(.....)

Skills Corner



يُفِيهِ التَّعَامُلُ مَعَ مَعَارَاتِ (القِرَاءَةِ - الْكِتَابَةِ - التَّحَدُّثِ) فِي الْوَرَقَةِ الْامْتِحَانِيَّةِ لِكُلِّ دَرَسٍ عَلَى حِدَةٍ.

1. Reading Corner

فَمِنْ بَقَرَاءَةِ Reading on lesson 6 SB page 42 مِنْ كِتَابِ الْمَعَاوِرِ صَفْحَةُ ٢٠١ ثُمَّ قُمْ بِالتَّحَرُّبِ عَلَي إِجَابَةِ بَعْضِ أَسْئَلَةِ قِطْعَةِ الْفَهْمِ طَبَقًا لِمَوَاصِفَاتِ الْوَرَقَةِ الْامْتِحَانِيَّةِ.

A. Answer the following questions :

- Giving the main idea إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

1. What's the main idea of the passage ?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context

تَحْمِينُ مَعْنَى مُفْرَدَةٍ لُغَوِيَّةٍ فِي النَّصِّ

2. The opposite of the word "safe" is

a. false b. dangerous c. different d. personal

- Extracting information استخراج المعلومات

3. Keep your secret.

a. technology b. food c. password d. language

2. Writing Corner

مَعَارَةُ الْكِتَابَةِ

A. Read the sentences

يَعْمَلُ تَسَاعُدًا عَلَى كِتَابَةِ مَقَرَّةِ إِسْئَالِيَّةٍ.

1. Always keep your password secret. ١. اَلتَّحْفِظُ دَائِمًا بِكَلِمَةِ السِّرِّ الْخَاصَّةِ بِكَ.
2. Don't make friends with people you don't know. ٢. لَا تَكُونُ صِدَاقَاتٍ مَعَ أَشْخَاصٍ لَا تَعْرِفُهُمْ.
3. Don't tell people about your personal information. ٣. لَا تُخَبِّرُ النَّاسَ عَنْ مَعْلُومَاتِكَ الشَّخْصِيَّةِ.
4. Tell your parents or teachers about anything wrong. ٤. أَخْبِرْ وَالِدَيْكَ أَوْ مُعَلِّمَكَ عَنْ أَيِّ شَيْءٍ خَطَأٍ.

B. Building sentences

D Read and complete :

tap - Don't - Ask - answer - Do

1. _____ make friends with people you don't know online.
2. _____ for help if you are worried about something.
3. First, _____ the message icon.
4. Don't _____ any video calls from someone you don't know.

تنويه

بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات
اللغوية الخاصة بالتدريس
قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

- Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"How to keep safe online"

3. Speaking Corner

ممارسة التحدث

Giving instructions

إعطاء التعليمات

(١) يمكن استخدام (imperative) صيغة الأمر المثبت أو المنفي لإعطاء التعليمات.

- Keep your password secret. - احتفظ بكلمة السر الخاصة بك.
- Don't make friends with people you don't know online. - لا تصادق / تصاحب أشخاص لا تعرفهم على الإنترنت.
- Study your lessons. - ذاكر دروسك.
- Don't make noise. - لا تسبب ضوضاء.

(٢) كيفية إعطاء تعليمات بخطوات عمل كوب من الشاي :

- Put some water in a kettle. - ضع بعضاً من الماء في الغلاية.
- Boil the water well. - اغلي الماء جيداً.
- Add some sugar and tea. - أضف بعضاً من السكر والشاي.
- Stir the cup well. - قلب الكوب جيداً.

General Exercises

On

LESSONS

5 & 6

• Understand

• Apply

• Create



1 Complete the following dialogue :

Ola is asking Mona about her mobile phone.

Ola : Do you have a mobile phone ?

Mona : Yes, (1) _____.

Ola : (2) _____ do you charge your mobile ?

Mona : With a (3) _____.

Ola : Do you use your mobile to (4) _____ selfies ?

Mona : Yes, I always take selfies with my friends.

Ola : Nice. How can you send a text message ?

Mona : I (5) _____ on this icon to send messages.

Ola : It seems easy.

Mona : Yes, of course.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. First, _____ some water in the kettle.
a. putting b. put c. puts d. is putting
2. _____ tell people online your telephone number.
a. Didn't b. Doesn't c. Don't d. Does
3. To send a text message, first tap the _____ icon.
a. video b. online c. website d. message
4. It is important to stay _____ online.
a. safe b. save c. weak d. hot
5. Don't move now. _____ here for me, please.
a. Wait b. Waiting c. To wait d. Waited
6. Password is a word or numbers you _____ to go onto a website.
a. eat b. play c. use d. call
7. Computers and mobile phones are examples of _____.
a. technology b. electricity c. information d. phones
8. To make tea, first _____ water well.
a. taste b. boil c. give d. dry
9. _____ on a machine means to start it.
a. Feel b. Turn c. Give d. Fall
10. Famous or known means "_____".
a. lazy b. coward c. popular d. dry

3 Read the following, then answer the following :

I love technology. It's very useful for me. Technology helps us to do our work. We use it every day. We can send messages, do search and play games. But to stay safe online, you have to follow some important instructions. First, keep your password secret. You shouldn't tell people your personal information (e.g. telephone number). Don't make friends with people you don't know online. Don't send photos to people you don't know. Don't answer a phone call or video call from someone you don't know. If you are worried about something, tell a parent or a teacher.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What should you do when you are in trouble ?

2. What is the main idea of the passage ?

3. Why do you think you have to follow these rules when you are online ?

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. You should keep your secret.

a. text

b. email

c. postcard

d. password

5. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to

a. telephone

b. instructions

c. call

d. technology

6. The underlined word "parent" means

a. mum or dad

b. uncle

c. teacher

d. mum's sister

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Doesn't waste your time.

(.....)

2. SB Turns your tablet on.

(.....)

3. Don't sends photos to people you don't know.

(.....)

4. First, puts some water in the kettle.

(.....)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) on :

"Your favourite place"

مخاطبته في نهاية الكتاب

Test

on unit 4

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

مستوى
يمكنك حل الاختبار
إلكترونيًا وتصويبه

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :



استمع إلى مملتك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (الطوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Soha loves _____.
a. video games b. break c. nature d. phone
2. She likes _____ the trees and animals.
a. looking b. watching c. walking d. being
3. She _____ being in the garden.
a. likes b. plays c. doesn't like d. works
4. She likes looking at the _____.
a. garden b. house c. sky d. zoo

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Eyad is asking Emad about technology in his classroom.

Eyad : What is in your classroom ?

Emad : There (1) _____ two laptops in our classroom.

Eyad : Do you use tablets in your classroom ?

Emad : Yes, we often (2) _____ them.

Eyad : What are you (3) _____ now ?

Emad : I'm (4) _____ for information on the internet.

Eyad : About what ?

Emad : About 3D printers.

Eyad : Can you use (5) _____ in your classroom ?

Emad : No, mobiles are not allowed in class.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

My family members love technology. My brother Youssef is playing chess online. He is winning at the moment. I am doing my computer studies homework. I'm looking at websites for information about 3D

printers. My mum and sister, Sama are taking selfies. **They**'re sending one of their photos to my grandmother on her mobile phone. My dad is **sending** an email to my uncle in the USA. My uncle lives in New York. He is an electrical engineer in a company. He has got two daughters and a son called Tamer. Tamer is a student in the Faculty of Medicine.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What does the passage talk about ?

2. Is Youssef a winner or a loser ?

3. Do you think the internet is useful for the writer ? Why ?

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The opposite of the underlined word "**sending**" is

- a. going b. receiving c. making d. doing

5. My uncle lives in the

- a. UAE b. ARE c. USA d. KSA

6. The underlined pronoun "**They**" refers to

- a. Youssef and Sama b. Sama and her mum
c. Tamer and Youssef d. Tamer and Sama

D. Vocabulary & Structure


4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1.  Are you a dictionary ?-Yes, of course.


- a. doing b. using c. sitting d. running

2. Don't noise in the library.

- a. do b. look c. take d. make

3.  Write for how to make a cup of tea.

- a. information b. messages c. icons d. instructions

4.  your password secret.

- a. Keep b. Keeps c. Kept d. Keeping

- 5. I am good at drawing _____. This is my hobby.
a. books b. money c. banks d. pictures
- 6. At the moment, Ali _____ to music.
a. listen b. is listening c. listening d. listens
- 7. When you meet someone, _____ "Hello!".
a. give b. click c. say d. tap
- 8. _____ there any money with you?
a. Are b. Is c. Aren't d. Am
- 9. How can you _____ your poster easy to read?
a. take b. make c. break d. give
- 10. Are you wearing the school _____?
a. uniform b. university c. bike d. bus

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. She is watches a nice programme now. ()
2. Didn't play in the street. It's dangerous. ()
3. There is some books over there. ()
4. Are there any water with you? ()

E. Writing

- 6** Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on : **How to keep safe online**

Quiz

on units

1,2,3&4

اختبار تراكمي على الوحدات (١، ٢، ٣ و ٤)

يقوم المعلم باختيار اختبار مصغر (واحد) من (A) or (B) لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمعلومات الواردة في الوحدات

Model A

* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. She's wearing a red around her neck.
a. sock b. ring c. scarf d. jacket
2. How does he play football ? - Always.
a. many b. often c. long d. much
3. A is a photo you take of yourself.
a. call b. board c. printer d. selfie
4. She at the moment.
a. works b. worked c. is working d. work
5. You shouldn't tell people about your
a. books b. houses c. subjects d. secrets

Model B

* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A/An is the top room in a house.
a. office b. attic c. shop d. kitchen
2. The school should be followed in all schools.
a. roles b. rulers c. rules d. rows
3. He score a lot of goals. He is very smart.
a. can b. mustn't c. has d. able to
4. A baby bird is very It can't fly for a long time.
a. strong b. ugly c. fast d. weak
5. for help if you are worried about anything.
a. Ask b. Asks c. Asking d. Asked

UNIT 5

Holidays

SB pages 44 : 53 WB pages 102-108



Objectives

• Reading :

A description of a holiday;
an advertisement for learning English

• Writing :

An advertisement for a holiday; an email about
a holiday

• Listening :

A conversation about a holiday; a discussion about
a day out

• Speaking :

Describing a place; talking about a holiday;
responding to news

• Language :

The past simple

• Values :

Respect

• Issues :

Environmental awareness

• العلامة 100 تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب
• العلامة 100 تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات

أسئلة
كل وحدة تضم

• كرسيه المعاصر للترفيه والاحتفال في نهاية الكتب
• ملحق (Master your term)

الامتحان
الوي



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

jungle (n)	أدغال / غابة كثيفة	beach (n)	شاطئ
desert (n)	صحراء	sand (n)	رمل
activity (n)	نشاط	river (n)	نهر
tent (n)	خيمة	rock (n)	صخرة
cave (n)	كهف	sandcastle (n)	قلعة من الرمال
forest (n)	غابة	waterfall (n)	شلال

- تنويه** ■ **Key Vocabulary** هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
- **Master your Vocabulary** يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
- **Glossary** لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 1

SB pages 44 & 45 WB page 102

check (ed) (v)	يراجع	country (n)	دولة
number (ed) (v), (n)	يرقم - رقم	lake (n)	بحيرة
map (n)	خريطة	turn (ed) (v), (n)	يدور - دور

Lesson 2

SB pages 46 & 47 WB page 103

frightened (adj)	خائف / مرعوب	picnic (n)	نزهة خلوية
weather (n)	طقس	fantastic (adj)	رائع
hotel (n)	فندق	warm (adj)	دافئ

Famous places

اماكن مشهورة

Sahara Desert (الصحراء الكبرى)	صحراء صداري	Al Azhar Park	حديقة الأزهر
Djara cave	كهف الجارة	Morocco (n)	دولة المغرب
Siwa	واحة سيوة	Marrakesh (n)	مراكش (مدينة في دولة المغرب)

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
write يكتب	wrote	written
ride يركب	rode	ridden
swim يسبح	swam	swum

Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite العكس
regular منتظم	irregular غير منتظم
near قريب	far بعيد
go into يدخل	go out يخرج
delicious لذيذ	terrible فظيع

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

beach	the area of sand or small stones in front of the sea	شاطئ
bike	a bicycle	دراجة
camel	a desert animal of Africa and Asia with a long neck	جمل
delicious	tasting very nice	لذيذ
desert	a very dry place where it does not often rain	صحراء
forest	a large area with lots of trees close together	غابة
game	an activity or competition that you play with one or more people	لعبة
lake	a large natural area of water, with land all around	بحيرة
mountain	a high area of land, higher than the land around it	جبل
jungle	a tropical forest with lots of plants and trees	أدغال
waterfall	the part of a river where the water falls down from a high place	شلل
cave	an opening in a large rock or mountain	كهف
picnic	a lunch that you prepare yourself to take on a trip and eat outside	نزهة (خلوية)

river	water that flows naturally from the mountains to the sea	نهر
sand	very small pieces of rock that you find next to a river or the sea	رمال
sandcastle	a building made of sand	قلعة من الرمل
sea	the salt water that covers a large part of the Earth	بحر
tent	something that you can sleep in when you go camping	خيمة

II Listening and Reading



Listening



• on Lesson 1 SB page 45

Taha : Guess⁽¹⁾ where I am, Sara. I'm in a place where there are a lot of trees.

Sara : Are there monkeys in the trees ?

Taha : No. It's very dark⁽²⁾ and quiet.

Sara : Are you in a forest⁽³⁾ ?

Taha : Yes, I am!

Sara : My turn! I'm in a place with a lot of sand⁽⁴⁾.

Taha : I know! You're in the desert⁽⁵⁾.

Sara : No, I'm not. There isn't any water in the desert.

There's a lot of water in my place.

Taha : You're on the beach⁽⁶⁾!

Sara : That's right⁽⁷⁾!

Taha : Now, I'm in a dark place. When I

speak, I can hear my words again and again.

Listen. (calls out with echo (صدى الصوت) Hello ! (echo comes twice).

Sara : That's easy. You're in a cave ! Can you see any bats⁽⁸⁾ ?

Taha : No, I can't. It's very dark in here !



Check Vocabulary

خفاش (8) هذا صحيح (7) شاطئ (6) صحراء (5) رمال (4) غابة (3) مظلم (2) يذعن / يتوقع (1)

Reading

on Lesson 2 SB page 46

My holiday photos

1. Last **summer**⁽¹⁾, when the **weather**⁽²⁾ was hot, we went to the beach near my home in Hurghada. Mariam made this **sandcastle**⁽³⁾. There was a **cave**⁽⁴⁾ in the rocks. But Mariam didn't want to go into the cave because she was **frightened**⁽⁵⁾!
2. In October, we visited my uncle, aunt and cousins in Cairo. We had a picnic in Al Azhar Park. We ate **delicious**⁽⁶⁾ food. Then we played games and Ali rode his bike.
3. When I was eight, we went to Siwa. We swam in the **lake**⁽⁷⁾, and climbed the **mountain**⁽⁸⁾. We saw camels and slept in a tent in the desert. It was my **favourite holiday**⁽⁹⁾!



Check Vocabulary

أجازة مفضلة (9) جبل (8) بحيرة (7) لذيذ (6) خائف (5) كعك (4) قاعة من الرمال (3) الطقس (2) فصل الصيف (1)

• on Lesson 2 WB page 103

Hi Eman,

Last summer, my family **had** a fantastic holiday in Morocco. We **visited** a big beach and then we **slept** in a nice hotel. We **didn't swim** in the sea. It **wasn't** very warm! But I rode on a camel. That **was** fun. We **visited** a city called Marrakesh, too and we **went** to a museum. We also **ate** some delicious food.

Write soon.

Hana



General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 beach - coast

• beach

شاطئ / بلاج (يصطحق للمصيف والسباحة وقضاء أوقات ممتعة)

ex.: - Hurghada has beautiful beaches.

• coast

ساحل بجوار البحر أقد يكون غير مؤهل للسباحة

ex.: - Alexandria lies on the north coast of Egypt.

2 journey - trip - picnic

• journey

رحلة طويلة

ex.: - The journey from Cairo to Aswan takes a long time.

• trip

رحلة قصيرة

ex.: - I went on a trip to Alexandria for two days.

• picnic

نزهة خلوية في الهواء الطلق

ex.: - I had a picnic in Al-Azhar Park.

3 'd like to + inf. = would like to + inf.

يريد أن

ex.: - I'd like to go to the beach.

- Where would you like to go ?

4 desert / dessert

• desert

صحراء

ex.: - There are a lot of camels in the desert.

• dessert

الحلو (بعد الوجبات)

ex.: - I like having ice cream for the dessert.

Important expressions & prepositions

frightened of	خائف من	have a picnic	يقوم بزيارة في الهواء الطلق
swim in a lake	يسبح في بحيرة	sleep in a tent	ينام في خيمة
ride on a camel	يركب على جمل	make a sandcastle	يبنى قلعة من الرمال
go into a cave	يدخل كهف	climb a mountain	يتسلق جبل

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

- When the water of the river falls from a high place, it's called
a. waterwheel b. waterfall c. lake d. sea
- A is a large hole inside a mountain.
a. river b. forest c. cave d. lake
- We sleep in a in the desert.
a. tin b. flat c. tent d. lake
- A is a very dry place where it does not often rain.
a. dessert b. desert c. river d. sea

SB, WB and Previous Exams

- WB "....." are large areas with a lot of trees and bushes.
a. Deserts b. Rivers c. Waterfalls d. Forests
- My family and I went to the beach and I a sandcastle.

(Naasser-Beni Suef 2020)

- made b. had c. climbed d. camped

- Egypt, Libya and Lebanon are

(Qalyoubia 2020)

- mountains b. deserts c. countries d. rivers

- are very strong. They can carry 200 kilos of bags.

(الامتحان مجمع طنطا - الغربية ٢٠٢١)

- Camels b. Giraffes c. Birds d. Crocodiles

- SB Sayed swam in the at Siwa.

- river b. lake c. mountain d. cave

El-Moasser Exercises

- The Nile is the longest one in the world.
a. River b. Lake c. Beach d. Sea

11. This restaurant makes _____ food. All people like it.
a. bad b. delicious c. unknown d. sad
12. Egypt is the most important _____ in Africa.
a. city b. country c. town d. continent
13. In a cave, we can see _____.
a. bats b. seats c. sweets d. mountains
- Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions
14. We had a _____ in Al-Azhar Park in Cairo.
a. desert b. tent c. picnic d. bike
15. I always feel frightened _____ dangerous animals.
a. for b. on c. of d. off
16. The train _____ from Luxor to Cairo was tiring.
a. journey b. picnic c. tour d. flight

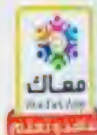
III Language

The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

Formation التكوين

Affirmative Statements

الجملة الخبرية
المثبتة



(a) Regular verbs :

(أ) الأفعال المنتظمة :

Subject الفاعل + التصريف الثاني للفعل

⚡ لاحظ قواعد إضافة (d/ ed/ ied) للفعل في زمن الماضي البسيط.

الفعل المنتهي بـ	يضاف له	مثال Example
e (بعض الأفعال)	+ d	invite → invited
y (حرف ساكن) + y	+ ied	carry → carried
y (حرف متحرك) + y	+ ed	stay → stayed
(حرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك)	يضاعف الحرف الأخير + ed	stop → stopped
بعض الأفعال لا يضاعف الحرف الأخير بها	+ ed	visit → visited

(b) Irregular verbs :

(ب) الأفعال غير المنتظمة :

هناك أفعال غير منتظمة لا تتبع هذه القاعدة مثل :

الفعل	الماضي	الفعل	الماضي
cut	cut	put	put
eat	ate	drink	drank
swim	swam	go	went
sleep	slept	ride	rode

لاحظ أن :

يتم استخدام (verb to be) في زمن الماضي كالآتي :

I / He / She / It → فاعل مفرد → was / wasn't

We / They / You → فاعل جمع → were / weren't

ex. - Mariam was frightened of the cave.

- There were not (weren't) any cars on the beach.

في حالة النفي نستخدم الصيغة الآتية :

Negative

2 Statements

الجملة النافية

Subject فاعل + didn't + inf. المصدر

ex. - Rana didn't study her lessons yesterday.

- I didn't send an email to my friend last week.

- She didn't go to the beach.

Stop here!



- اختبار مصغر للأزهر الشريف.
- طبق ما تعلمته واختر ذكائك

(a) Yes/No questions :

(أ) السؤال بـ "هل" :

في حالة الإستفهام باستخدام «هل» :

Did + subject + inf. ... ?
 الفاعل المصدر

ex. - Did you clean the car ?

- Yes, I did.

- No, I didn't.

Interrogative

دقيقة
الإستفهام

(ب) السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام :

أما في حالة الإستفهام باستخدام كلمة استفهام نستخدم الصيغة الآتية :

Question word + did + subject + inf. ... ?
 كلمة الإستفهام الفاعل المصدر

ex. - What did you study ?

- Where did she go ?

► **Key words** كلمات دالة

in the past في الماضي

ago منذ

yesterday أمس

in + سنة ماضية (2000)

last

→ year السنة الماضية

→ month الشهر الماضي

→ week الأسبوع الماضي

→ Tuesday الثلاثاء الماضي

Usage الاستخدام

يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن فعل حدث وانتهى في زمن الماضي.

ex.:- Maha helped her mother with her work last night.

- She went to school two hours ago.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. What did you _____ yesterday ?

a. gets

b. got

c. get

d. getting

(El Fashn-Beni Suef 2020)

2. When I went to school, I good at English. (El Saf-Cairo 2020)
 a. didn't b. don't c. can't d. wasn't
3. **SB** What did you for dinner last night ?
 a. eat b. ate c. eats d. eating
4. **SB** When I eight, we went to Siwa,
 a. am b. were c. is d. was
5. **WB** Where you go on holiday last year ? (T. 4) *امتحان مجمع بني سويف - ناصر (2020)*
 a. do b. did c. does d. done
6. **SB** Sayed and Mariam into the cave yesterday.
 a. go b. goes c. going d. went
7. Last summer, my family a nice holiday in Morocco. (Ain Shams-Cairo 2020)
 a. have b. having c. has d. had

🔄 El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

8. Yesterday, we didn't our lessons.
 a. studied b. study c. studying d. studies
9. Mona a beautiful dress yesterday.
 a. wear b. wore c. wears d. wearing
10. My uncle a new car last year.
 a. buy b. bought c. buys d. buying
11. Who did you after school last Thursday ?
 a. see b. sees c. saw d. seeing
12. Mazen play well yesterday.
 a. didn't b. don't c. doesn't d. isn't
13. you have a good weekend last week ?
 a. Does b. Do c. Did d. Done
14. your friends ready for the exam last week ?
 a. Was b. Do c. Were d. Did
15. Salma worked very hard and very well in the exam.
 a. do b. does c. doing d. did
16. Last October, we my uncle and cousins in Cairo,
 a. visit b. visits c. visited d. visiting

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

🔄 SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. What do you do yesterday ? (West Zagazig-Sharkia 2020) (.....)
2. **WB** There wasn't any cars on the beach. (.....)

3. **SB** They didn't travel by car. They walk.

4. Yara play tennis a week ago.

(West Cairo 2020)

➔ El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

5. Did you bought a new jacket?

6. Yesterday, I gives Ibrahim a present.

7. My sister has a baby girl called Sara yesterday.

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع معارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 2 SB page 46 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ٢٢٣ ثم قم بالتدرب على اجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions :

- Giving the main idea إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

1. What's the best title for the passage?

- My holiday photos.

- Extracting information استخراج المعلومات

2. What was there in the rocks?

3. Why didn't Mariam want to go into the cave?

2. Writing Corner

معاراة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

تعمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

"My holidays"

1. I went to the beach last summer and made sandcastles on the beach.

١. ذهبت للشاطئ، الصيف الماضي وقمت بعمل قلاع من الرمال على الشاطئ.

2. Last October, I visited my uncle in Cairo and I had a picnic.

٢. زرت عمي في القاهرة في أكتوبر الماضي وخرجت معه في تزهة في الهواء الطلق.

3. When I was eight, I visited Siwa and swam in the lake.

٣. عندها كنت في الثامنة من عمري. زرت واحدة سيوة وسبحت في البحيرة.

B. Building sentences

Read and complete :

was - Did - didn't - Last - Next

1. She study her lessons well.
2. you help your mother with the washing up ?
3. Hala afraid of the dog.
4. summer, I had a fantastic holiday.

تنويه

بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات
اللغوية الخاصة بالدرس
قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة مقالة إنشائية.

- Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"Your favourite holiday"

3. Speaking Corner

محادثة التحدث

1. Asking and answering questions about places السؤال والإجابة عن الأماكن

Questions ?	Answers ✓
• Where would you like to go ? Why ? أين تود أن تذهب ؟ ولماذا ؟	• I'd like to go to the beach to enjoy swimming. أرغب في الذهاب للشاطئ لأستمتع بالسباحة.
• What can you see there ? ما الذي يمكن أن تراه هناك ؟	• I can see pure water. أستطيع أن أرى مياه نقية.

2. Talking about a holiday

الحديث عن الإجازة

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------|
| - I spent my holiday in (مكان). | لقد قضيت أجازتي في (مكان معين). |
| - I enjoyed (نشاط من الأنشطة). | لقد استمتعت بـ (نشاط معين). |
| - I like walking and playing in (وقت معين). | أحب المشي واللعب في (وقت معين). |

General Exercises

On

LESSONS 1 & 2

• Understand

• Apply

• Create



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

يسمع إلى معلمك ويختار الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. We had a picnic at last week.
a. the cinema b. Al Azhar Park c. the sea d. the jungle
2. We ate food.
a. delicious b. terrible c. warm d. hot
3. Ali rode on a
a. camel b. bike c. bus d. train
4. We played
a. tennis b. football c. games d. handball

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed is asking Hassan about his holiday.

Ahmed : Where did you go on holiday ?

Hassan : I went to the (1)

Ahmed : What (2) you do on the beach ?

Hassan : I (3) in the sea and made a sandcastle.

Ahmed : When did you (4) back ?

Hassan : I came back on Friday.

Ahmed : Did you take any photos ?

Hassan : Yes. I (5) many photos.

Ahmed : Can I come with you the next time ?

Hassan : Certainly.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Last summer, when the weather was hot, we went to the beach in Hurghada. Many tourists come to Hurghada as it has a lot of exciting places. It is a beach resort **منتجع** town. **It** has many tourist attractions. Its beaches are beautiful and wonderful. Speedboats **سريعة قوارب** give you the chance to enjoy the **sea** and to go fishing. The hotels are comfortable. On the beach, my sister, Mariam made a sandcastle, but I played football.

My mum made sandwiches for us. My dad read the newspaper under the umbrella. There was a cave in the rocks. But Mariam didn't want to go into the cave because she was frightened. It was really an unusual adventure in the cave. We enjoyed our stay in Hurghada very much.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.

2. Why didn't Mariam want to go into the cave ?

3. What do you think of Hurghada as a tourist city ?

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to _____.
a. beach b. sandcastle c. Hurghada d. weather
5. The underlined word "sea" means _____.
a. fresh water b. sweet water c. dirty water d. salt water
6. My mum made _____ for us.
a. juice b. sandwiches c. sandcastles d. tea

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Where did you _____ yesterday ?
a. go b. went c. goes d. going
2. **SB** There were camels in the _____.
a. desert b. sea c. river d. lake
3. Nada _____ a mobile phone five years ago.
a. buy b. didn't buy c. doesn't buy d. buying
4. You should _____ your answers in each question in the exam.
a. make b. check c. do d. go
5. Children enjoy building _____ on the beach.
a. mud b. sandcastles c. rock d. mountain

(El Miraghat-Souheig 2020)

(Rafiah-North Samia 2020)



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

view (n)	منظر طبيعي	castle (n)	قلعة
reorder (ed) (v)	يعيد ترتيب	flag (n)	علم - راية
camp (ed) (v), (n)	مسكر / معسكر	project (n)	مشروع
souvenir (n)	هدية تذكارية	check (ed) (v)	يفحص
market (n)	سوق تجاري	students (n)	طلاب
study (ied) (v)	يدرس - يذاكر	culture (n)	ثقافة
course (n)	دورة تدريبية	advertisement (n)	إعلان

• **ملحوظة** Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.

• **Master your Vocabulary** يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).

• **Glossary** تحويلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 3 SB pages 48 & 49 WB page 104

friendly (adj)	ودود	holiday flat (n)	شقة لقضاء الأجازة
travel (ied) (v)	يسافر	sea animals (n)	الحيوانات البحرية

Lesson 4 SB page 50 WB page 105

wonderful (adj)	رائع	language school	مدرسة لغات
exciting (adj)	مثير	safari rides (n)	رحلات سفاري
activity (n)	نشاط	really (adv)	حقًا
London Eye (n)	لعبة في الملاهي (بلندن)	Germany (n)	ألمانيا

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
come يأتي	came	come
speak يتحدث	spoke	spoken

Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite العكس
here هنا	there هناك
beautiful جميل	ugly قبيح
interesting مثير	boring مممل
remember يتذكر	forget ينسى

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

camp	sleep outside in a tent	بوتستر
castle	a large, old building with towers	قلعة
dolphin	a grey sea animal that is very clever and can jump high	دولفين
flag	the colours of a country on a piece of material	علم
hotel	a building where you can pay for a room to sleep in for a night or longer	فندق
queen	a woman who rules a country	ملكة
tower	a tall, narrow part of a building	برج
souvenir	something that you buy to remember a place or an event you went to	هدية تذكارية
view	the things you can see from a certain place	منظر طبيعي
holiday flat	an apartment you can stay in for a holiday, usually near the sea	شقة لقضاء الاجازة

II Listening and Reading



Listening

• on Lesson 3 SB page 48

Hatem : Hi, Yunis! How was your holiday ?

Yunis : Hi, Hatem! It was great, thanks !

Hatem : Where did you go ?

Yunis : I went to Jordan⁽¹⁾ by plane.

Hatem : Wow! Did you visit your family there ?

Check Vocabulary

دونه العربي (1)



- Yunis** : No, we stayed in a **holiday flat**⁽²⁾ by the beach. We had a wonderful **view**⁽³⁾ from the windows. Every morning, I saw dolphins in the sea.
- Hatem** : Did you swim in the sea?
- Yunis** : Yes, we did. We swam every day! We used a **map**⁽⁴⁾ and read a book about Jordan, and we visited a lot of famous places. We went to this old castle. Look, here's a picture of it on my phone.
- Hatem** : How did you get to the **castle**⁽⁵⁾?
- Yunis** : We climbed up the mountain!
- Hatem** : Did you buy any **souvenirs**?
- Yunis** : Yes, I did. I bought this small souvenir for you.
- Hatem** : Oh, how interesting. Egypt's flag is also red, white and black. Jordan's flag has another colour – green, too. Thanks, Yunis!

Check Vocabulary

شقة (1) شقة (2) شقة (3) شقة (4) شقة (5) شقة

Reading

on Lesson 4 SB page 50

Learn English in London!

Our **students**⁽¹⁾ come from all around the world to study and learn in this **exciting**⁽²⁾ city.

Holiday **courses**⁽³⁾ are for one, two or three weeks.

I had a **wonderful**⁽⁴⁾ time at the language school

I was there for two weeks. It was nice to meet students from different countries. My favourite

place was **Windsor Castle**⁽⁵⁾. We went there by

train. We walked all around

the castle, but we did not see the Queen! 😞

Mona, Egypt

I learnt English and had a really great holiday at the same time! London's shops are fantastic.

I bought a lot of **souvenirs**⁽⁶⁾. My favourite

activity⁽⁷⁾ was a ride on the London Eye, because there was a beautiful view of the city from the top.

Laura, France



Check Vocabulary

طلاب (1) هدايا تذكارية (2) نشاط (3) قلعة ويندسور في إنجلترا (4) رائع (5) دورات تدريبية (6) هدايا تذكارية (7) نشاط

When I first came to the language school, I was not very good at English. But the teachers helped me a lot. The lessons were fun, and for homework we did interesting projects⁽⁸⁾. I enjoyed speaking English !

Jurgen, Germany



Check Vocabulary

(8) مشروع



Videoscript

Lesson 3 SB page 48 .

Narrator : Almost⁽¹⁾ 15 million people come to Egypt every year. It's a very popular⁽²⁾ place for a holiday.

When people come to Egypt, they can visit exciting cities like Alexandria , beaches, caves, and the beautiful desert.

They also come to see the many important places from history⁽³⁾. This is the Khan family. They're from Jordan⁽⁴⁾. Last year they visited Egypt on holiday. They visited Giza to see the Pyramids⁽⁵⁾ and the Sphinx⁽⁶⁾. And they rode on a camel. They visited the beautiful city of Luxor. Then, they went to the Valley of the Kings⁽⁷⁾ ... where they visited the Karnak Temple⁽⁸⁾. They also spent some days in Cairo.

They went shopping in the Khan el-Khalili market⁽⁹⁾. Here, they bought souvenirs for their friends back at home. Finally, they went to Hurghada and they swam in the Red Sea.

Egypt is a wonderful place for a holiday.

Where do you want to go ?

Check Vocabulary

(1) تقريباً	(2) محبوب / مشهور	(3) تاريخ	(4) دولة الأردن	(5) الهرامات
(6) أبو الهول	(7) وادي الملوك	(8) معبد الكرنك	(9) سوق خان الخليلي	



Listening

• on Lesson 3 WB page 104

Narrator 1

Man 1 : Where did you go on holiday last year ?



Narrator 2

Man 1 : Where did you stay ?

Narrator 3

Man 1 : How did you travel there ?

Narrator 4

Man 1 : Did you climb a mountain ?

Narrator 5

Man 1 : What did you eat ?

Reading

on Lesson 4 WB page 105

Hi Ali

Last summer, I **travelled** to Egypt because I wanted to learn Arabic. I **went** to a language school in Cairo. I **had** a wonderful time.

I **was** there for two weeks. The people in Cairo **were** very friendly. Now I have many new friends.

When I first went to the language school, I **wasn't** very good at Arabic. But the teachers **helped** me, and the lessons **were** fun. Now I can talk to my new friends in Arabic!

Cairo's shops are fantastic. I **bought** lots of souvenirs. My favourite place was the Cairo Tower. I **enjoyed** the view of the city from the top.

What did you do last summer ?

Write soon and tell me.

Andy, England.



General Notes on Reading and Listening

1 Arab - Arabic

• Arab

عربي الجنسية / شخص عربي

ex.: - Arab countries should help each other.

لغة عربية

• Arabic

ex.: - People in Egypt speak Arabic.

2 remember - remind

* remember

ex.: - Do you remember yesterday's homework?

يتذكر من تلقاء نفسه

* remind

ex.: - Salma reminded me with her birthday.

يذكر شخص آخر بشيء

3 in + لغة

ex.: - I can talk to my friends in Arabic.

- Tourists usually speak to sellers in English.

4 for + مدة زمنية

ex.: - I was at a language school for four years.

5 souvenirs / presents

* souvenirs

هدايا تذكارية (تذكر بمكان الزيارة)

ex.: - I bought souvenirs for my family from Paris.

* presents

هدايا (تقدم في المناسبات)

ex.: - On my birthday, I got a lot of presents.

6 enjoy + (inf. + ing)

ex.: - I enjoyed speaking English.

للحظ عدم استخدام حرف جر بعد enjoy

Important expressions & prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

have + (وجبة)	يتناول (وجبة)	by the lake = next to the lake	بحوار البحيرة
do a project	ينفذ مشروع	make an advertisement for	يصنع إعلاناً لـ
go on a holiday	يذهب في أجازة	find out	يعتشف
get to school	يصل للمدرسة	stay at	يلتزم في
from the top	من أعلى القمة	walk to school	يمشي للمدرسة
have a great holiday	يقضي أجازة رائعة	come from + (بلد)	يأتي من (بلد)
have a wonderful time	يقضي وقتاً ممتعاً	from all around the world	من جميع أنحاء العالم
at the same time	في نفس الوقت	= from all over the world	بعد فائمة
at the market	في السوق	make a list	يصدر لـ
go with	يذهب مع	the view of	

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

- Every country has a different
a. culture b. door c. hotel d. castle
- A is something you buy to remember a holiday.
a. view b. project c. souvenir d. hotel
- Egypt's is red, white and black.
a. fig b. fin c. fan d. flag
- He is bad at English, so he's going to have a/an next summer.
a. culture b. advertisement c. course d. hotel

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

- SB On the London Eye, there was a beautiful from the top.
a. project b. activity c. souvenir d. view
- WB "....." is to sleep for a time in a tent. (Al-Agami - Alex. 2020)
a. Camp b. Leave c. Swim d. Climb
- SB Which holiday can people do in Egypt? (امتحان مجمع بنى سريخ - القشن ٢٠٢١)
a. weeks b. views c. activities d. souvenirs
- are very friendly sea animals. (South Giza 2020)
a. Sharks b. Dolphins c. Snakes d. Whales

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

- You can search for a job in in newspapers.
a. articles b. flats c. courses d. advertisements
- Some people like to send their children to schools to learn foreign languages لغات أجنبية.
a. sports b. language c. art d. religious
- The clever engineer very beautiful buildings.
a. hits b. adds c. cooks d. designs

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

- Many students come from all the world to study here.
a. round b. above c. around d. opposite

13. When you go shopping, you should a list first.
a. give b. make c. do d. go
14. countries should help each other.
a. Arab b. Arabic c. Arabia d. Arabs
15. Can you talk to your friends English ?
a. on b. up c. in d. into
16. My mother buys her things every week the market.
a. of b. with c. at d. into

III Language

تم شرح زمن الماضي البسيط في الدرس الأول والثاني من الوحدة

- I **played** tennis last week.
- **Did** you **play** tennis last week ?
- **When** did you **play** tennis ?

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 4 SB page 50 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة رقم ٢٣٧ ثم قم بالتدرب علي إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions :

- **Giving the main idea** إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

1. What's the main idea of the passage ?

- Learning English in London.

- **Extracting information** استخراج المعلومات

2. How long are the holiday courses in London ?

3. How did Mona go to Windsor Castle ?

2. Writing Corner

مهارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

1. I visited London to learn English and had a holiday. جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.
2. I enjoyed holiday courses and had a wonderful time in a language school. ١. لقد زرت لندن لتعلم الإنجليزية وقضيت أجازة.
3. The teachers helped me a lot to speak English well. ٢. لقد استمتعت بدورات تدريبية وقضيت وقتًا رائعًا بمدرسة لغات.
٣. ساعدني المدرسين كثيرًا لتحدث الإنجليزية جيدًا.

B. Building sentences

⊙ Read and complete :

help - helped - Where - ate - was

1. did you spend your holiday ? - In Alex.
2. I a lot of fish yesterday.
3. My mother me with my homework.
4. It a very beautiful holiday.

تلميح

بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات
اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين
قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

- Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :
"Your last visit to the museum."

تدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

3. Speaking Corner

مهارة التحدث

Asking and answering questions about last holiday

السؤال والإجابة عن آخر أجازة قضيتها

Questions ?	Answers ✓
• Where did you spend your last holiday ? أين قضيت آخر أجازة لك ؟	- I spent it in Hurghada. لقد قضيتها في مدينة الغردقة.
• Did you swim in the sea ? هل سبحت في البحر ؟	- Yes, I did. نعم، سبحت.
• What did you see there ? ماذا رأيت هناك ؟	- I saw the dolphin show. لقد رأيت عرض الدولفين.
• What food did you eat ? ما الطعام الذي تناولته هناك ؟	- I ate a lot of fish. لقد تناولت الكثير من السمك.

General Exercises

On

LESSONS **3 & 4**

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Nour is telling Hana about her holiday.

Hana : Hi, Nour, How was your holiday ?

Nour : Hi, Hana. It was great, thanks.

Hana : Where (1) you go ?

Nour : I went to France.

Hana : Did you visit the Eiffel Tower ?

Nour : Yes, I (2)

Hana : Did you enjoy your time there ?

Nour : Yes, I (3) my time there.

Hana : (4) did you come home ?

Nour : I came back (5) Sunday. *(East Tanta - Gharbia 2020)*

2 Read the following, then answer the questions : *(Mashtoul - Sharkia 2020)*

My name is Mona. I live in Cairo. I work hard at school to be a doctor. My favourite subjects are science and computer studies. I also want to speak English well to other children in different places. My teacher is very good, but I also like to use technology. I use a tablet to practise my English. Sometimes I use my phone, too ! Last year, I learnt English in London with my family. It was **fantastic** ! I cycled to summer school every day and I met students from different countries. Now, I have a friend from Uganda ! My favourite place was a river in Cambridge. It was very beautiful, but I didn't swim in it !

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the main idea of the passage ?

2. Who did Mona go to London with ?

3. Do you think that Mona enjoyed her visit to London ? Why ?

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. What did not Mona use to learn English ?

a. Her teacher b. Her phone c. A laptop d. A tablet

5. The underlined word "**fantastic**" means
 a. ugly b. very good c. very large d. very bad
6. The underlined word "**it**" refers to the
 a. school b. river c. sea d. computer

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. In Sharm El Sheikh, there is a "..... show" in the pool.
 a. camel b. shark c. dolphin d. rabbit
2. **WB** Last summer, my family a fantastic holiday.
 a. has b. had c. have d. hasn't
3. In a/an school, children can learn many languages.
 a. ordinary b. public c. language d. Arabic
4. **WB** Where did Andy last summer ?
 a. went b. go c. goes d. going
5. At school, we a lot of exciting projects last year.
 a. made b. looked c. did d. tried
6. **WB** A is a big, strong building from the past.
 a. mall b. circle c. castle d. cassette
7. In the area of the Pyramids, you can horses.
 a. drive b. give c. eat d. ride
8. Salma didn't fish for lunch.
 a. eats b. eaten c. ate d. eat
9. People do courses to study and
 a. earn b. learn c. steal d. lose
10. Dina's best was Windsor Castle.
 a. time b. distance c. place d. cinema

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. **SB** What did Yunis see and did there ? (.....)
2. When we went to Wadi El Ryan, we camp by the lake. (.....)
3. What food did you eat ? - I eat a lot of fish. (.....)
4. I have a wonderful time at the hotel last summer. (.....)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"A day on the beach"

.....

.....

.....

.....



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

postcard (n)	كارت بريدى	email (n)	بريد إلكترونى
snail (n)	حيوان القواقع	theatre (n)	مسرح
light (n)	ضوء	the Eiffel Tower (n)	برج إيفل
sign (n)	لائحة / علامة	signature (n)	توقيع
great (adj)	عظيم	response (n)	رد
rule (n)	قاعدة		

- **Key Vocabulary** هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
 • **Master your Vocabulary** يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (مادق Master).
 • **Glossary** لحصيلة أكبر (المزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

تلميح

Lesson 5

SB page 51 · WB page 106

emotion (n)	عاطفة / شعور	windy (adj)	رياحى
repeat (ed) (v)	يكرر / يكرر	boat trip (n)	رحلة بحرية
tourist (n)	سائح	sandals (n)	حذاء مفتوح
sentence (n)	جمل	play (n)	مسرحية
happen (ed) (v)	يحدث	follow (ed) (v)	يتبع
expression (n)	تعبير	pity (n)	شفقة / شفقة

Lesson 6

SB page 52 · WB page 107

closed (adj)	مغلق	continue (d) (v)	يستمر
greeting (n)	تحية	Ramses Station (n)	محطة رمسيس
art (n)	الفن / الأعمال الفنية	tickets (n)	تذاكر
header (n)	رأس الصفحة	café (n)	مقهى
pass (ed) (v)	يمر على	closing (n)	إغلاق
forms (n)	نموذج / أشكال	sender (n)	مرسل
topic (n)	موضوع	Australia (n)	أستراليا

Famous places

The Science Museum	متحف العلوم	The Louvre	متحف اللوفر
The River Seine	نهر السين	The Valley of the Kings	وادي الملوك
Luxembourg Gardens	حدائق لوكسمبورج	the Nile	نهر النيل

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
lose يخسر / يفقد	lost	lost
fall يقع / يسقط	fell	fallen

Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite العكس
correct صحيح	incorrect غير صحيح
past و(في الساعات)	to إلا (في الساعات)
many عديد / كثير	few قليل (العدد)
win يفوز	lose يخسر

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

snail	a small, slow animal with a shell on its back	حيوان القواقع
-------	---	---------------

II Listening and Reading



Listening

• on Lesson 5 SB page 51

Man : What did you do yesterday, Mazin ?

Mazin : I went to the zoo.

Man : Oh, that's interesting! Did you enjoy the day ?

Mazin : No, I didn't.

Man : Oh, dear ! Why not ?

Mazin : Well, first, we went to see the monkeys. But they were all very tired. I think they were in bed.



Man : What a pity ! So you didn't see them ?

Mazin : No, we didn't. Then we went into a cave to see the bats. But it was dark, and I didn't see anything.

Man : What did you do next ?

Mazin : Then, we bought an ice cream and went to see the elephants. It was bath time for them.

Man : Wow ! How exciting !

Mazin : Yes, I enjoyed that. But then something bad happened.


Man : Oh, no! What happened ?

Mazin : An elephant ate my ice cream!



Reading

on Lesson 6 SB page 52

 New message

From : Fatma

To : Azza

Subject : My holiday

Hi, Azza !

I am back from my **holiday**⁽¹⁾ in Paris. I had a **wonderful**⁽²⁾ time! Paris is a great city for a holiday because there is so much to see and do. The food is **delicious**⁽³⁾. I ate a lot of new things, for example, **snails**⁽⁴⁾.

One day we climbed the Eiffel Tower, and from the top we had a **view**⁽⁵⁾ of the city. We visited museums and had a **picnic**⁽⁶⁾ in the Luxembourg Gardens.



Check Vocabulary

لذعة في الهواء الطلق⁽⁶⁾ | منظر طبيعي⁽⁵⁾ | مواقع⁽⁴⁾ | لأيد⁽³⁾ | رائع⁽²⁾ | أجارة⁽¹⁾

We also went on a boat on the River Seine. What a pity we did not have time to go to the **Science Museum**⁽⁷⁾. I also wanted to see the art at the Louvre, but it was closed. 😊

Near our hotel there was a busy market. I bought a T-shirt and some postcards. I also bought you a **souvenir**⁽⁸⁾. It is a very small **Eiffel Tower**⁽⁹⁾!

You can put it next to your bed. It has got a light on the top.
See you soon!

Fatma

Check Vocabulary

متحف العلوم (7) هدية تذكارية (8) برج إيفل (9)

• on Lesson 5 WB page 106

Hanan : I went to the beach last weekend.

Lina : Really ?

Hanan : When we arrived, it was very windy.

Lina : Oh dear!

Hanan : We didn't want to swim in the sea.

Lina : What a pity!

Hanan : Then the wind stopped and we went on a boat trip.

Lina : How exciting !

Hanan : We saw six big dolphins !

Lina : Wow!

Hanan : Then my brother's phone fell in the water.

Lina : Oh no!

Hanan : The phone was OK. Some new phones can go in water !

Lina : That's interesting!



• on Lesson 6 WB page 107

Hi Fady,

1. Last week, I travelled from Cairo to Aswan. My father bought our tickets at Ramses **Station**⁽¹⁾, then we got on the train. There were people from many **countries**⁽²⁾ on the train, for example, England and Australia.



Check Vocabulary

محطة (1) دول (2)

2. The train left Cairo at 8 o'clock, and soon we **passed**⁽³⁾ Giza. I enjoyed the **view**⁽⁴⁾ from the window and I saw the Nile. There were lots of boats. It was beautiful.
3. We arrived at Luxor at a quarter past six. Many tourists left the train here. They wanted to see the **Valley of the Kings**⁽⁵⁾ !
4. The train continued to Aswan. We arrived there at ten o'clock. My uncle was there to meet us ! It was a **wonderful journey**⁽⁶⁾ .
- See you soon !
- Mazin

Check Vocabulary

(3) مر على (4) منظر طبيعي (5) وادي الملوك (6) رحلة رائعة

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 back

* back (n)

ظهر

ex.: My back hurts me.

* (be) back (v) (adj)

يعود / عائد

ex.: I'm back from my holiday in Paris.

2 get on / get into / get out of / get off

* get on

يركب مواصلة (يدخلها واقفاً)

ex.: - I got on the bus / the train ... etc.

* get into

يركب مواصلة (صغيرة)

ex.: - I get into the car / the taxi.

* get out of

ينزل من مواصلة (صغيرة)

ex.: - I got out of the taxi quickly.

* get off

ينزل من مواصلة

ex.: - She got off the bus and went home.

Important expressions & prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

have a view of the city	يطل على المدينة	give examples	يعطي أمثلة
on the river	في النهر	bath time	وقت الاستحمام
walk on the grass	يسير على العشب	in bed	في الفراش (السرير)
take turns	يتبادل الأدوار	travel from to	يسافر من ... (مكان) ... إلى ... (مكان) ...
go on a boat	يذهب في رحلة بالقارب	for a holiday	لفضاء أجازة
see you soon	أراك قريباً		
for example	على سبيل المثال		

Exercise

on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

- My grandpa sent me a/an on my birthday.
a. shop b. ticket c. rule d. postcard
- Write your at the end of the email.
a. address b. title c. signature d. age
- What does this mean ? - It means "No smoking".
a. song b. sign c. email d. snail
- "....." is a delicious food in Paris.
a. Snakes b. Snails c. Soda d. Seals

SB , WB and Previous Exams

تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

- WB** The people in Egypt are very
a. friends b. friend c. friendly d. friendly way
- The students took to sing the song. (West Zagazig-Sharkia 2020)
a. turns b. repeats c. habits d. cover
- WB** My father bought our at Ramsis Station. (امتحان مجمع شمال سيناء - ربيع ٢٠٢١)
a. trains b. tickets c. presents d. sports
- WB** Hamdi went to buy rice, but the shop was
a. open b. closed c. clean d. favourite

El-Moasser Exercises

تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

- A place where we can watch plays is a
a. zoo b. theatre c. cinema d. circus

10. I prefer wearing in summer. It's comfortable open shoes.
a. dress b. shoes c. sandals d. socks
11. come to Egypt to enjoy the good weather and great monuments.
a. Thieves b. Tourists c. Scientists d. Bats
12. The Eiffel is a famous place in Paris.
a. River b. Museum c. Tower d. Garden
13. A is a place where we keep historical objects.
a. museum b. library c. bookshop d. tower

🔄 Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. Don't on the grass.
a. wake b. walk c. wear d. wave
15. Where did you go holiday ?
a. at b. of c. on d. off
16. I saw many things from the of the tower.
a. high b. above c. top d. long

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع معارفات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حدة.

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 6 SB page 52 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ٢٤٨ ثم قم بالتدرب على إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions :

- **Giving the main idea** إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

1. What's the best title for the passage ?

- "Fatma's holiday in Paris".

- **Extracting information** استخراج المعلومات

2. Why is Paris a great city for a holiday ?

3. What did Fatma buy from the market ?

2. Writing Corner

معارف الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

تعمل تساعدك على كتابة مقرة إنشائية.

"A holiday in Paris" أجارة في باريس

1. I had a wonderful time in Paris.

١. لقد قضيت وقتاً رائعاً في باريس.

2. There's too much to see in Paris.

٢. هناك الكثير من الأشياء تستحق المشاهدة في باريس.

3. I visited the Eiffel Tower and the Science Museum.

٣. لقد زرت برج إيفل ومتحف العلوم.

4. I bought some souvenirs and very good clothes.

٤. اشتريت بعض الهدايا التذكارية وملابس جيدة جداً.

B. Building sentences

⊙ Read and complete :

went - visit - visited - was - had

1. Last year, we _____ the Eiffel Tower.

2. I _____ on a boat on the River Seine.

3. When we arrived at the hotel, it _____ very windy.

4. We _____ a picnic in the Luxembourg Gardens.

تنويه

بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات
النحوية الخاصة بالدرس
قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة مقرة إنشائية.

- Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"Your favourite place"

3. Speaking Corner

معارف التحدث

1. Talking about holidays

التحدث عن أوقات الاجارة

- I spend my holiday in اسم المكان

- My favourite place is اسم المكان on holidays.

- I went with أسماء الأشخاص by اسم الوسيلة

2. Responding to news

الاستجابة للأخبار

Situation	الموقف	Response	الرد
1. I have tickets to see the new play at the theatre.		- How interesting / exciting !	يا له من شيء رائع / مثير !
2. Hamdi went to the shops to buy rice, but the shop was closed.		- Oh dear !	يا للهول !
3. There is a good film on TV this evening.		- Really ?	حقاً ؟
4. My favourite football team won 5-0 !		- Wow !	يا للروعة !
5. My favourite football team lost 0-5 !		- Oh no ! What a pity!	يا للحسرة !

Skills corner

★ تدرب على المهارات طبقاً للورقة الامتحانية كل درس على حده :

١. مهارة القراءة : تدرب على اسئلة قطعة الفهم (استخراج معلومات - اعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية - فهم ما يشير اليه الضمير - تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص - مهارة التفكير النقدي).

٢. مهارة الكتابة : تدرب على كيفية الكتابة مع مراعاة (التنظيم - التهجى - ترابط الافكار - علامات الترقيم - القواعد اللغوية - اختيار المفردات اللغوية).

٣. مهارة التحدث : تدرب على اتقان الوظائف اللغوية للتعامل مع سؤال المحادثة في الامتحان.

المعاصر في اللغة الانجليزية

املح ثقتك لمن يستحق



General Exercises

On

LESSONS

5 & 6

• Understand

• Apply

• Create



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (انصت للاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Last _____, Andy travelled to Egypt.

a. winter

b. summer

c. spring

d. autumn

2. Andy wanted to learn _____.

a. English

b. maths

c. science

d. Arabic

3. Andy went to a _____ in Cairo.

a. language school

b. zoo

c. park

d. museum

4. Andy had a _____ time in Egypt.

a. sad

b. long

c. short

d. wonderful

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Tamer is telling Nader about his holiday in Alexandria.

Nader : Where did you go on holiday last year ?

Tamer : I (1) _____ to Alexandria.

Nader : Where did you stay ?

Tamer : I stayed in my uncle's flat.

Nader : (2) _____ did you travel there ?

Tamer : I travelled (3) _____ train.

Nader : Did you (4) _____ in the sea ?

Tamer : Yes, I did.

Nader : What did you eat there ?

Tamer : I (5) _____ delicious fish.

(El Agami-Alex. 2020)

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. **SB** We usually _____ an email with "Hi" or "Dear".

a. stop

b. repeat

c. finish

d. start

2. Students should follow the school _____.

a. roles

b. rules

c. rulers

d. expressions

3. Judy many things from the top of Cairo Tower yesterday.
a. saw b. see c. sees d. seen
4. Every year, a lot of come to Egypt and visit the Pyramids.
a. carpenters b. teachers c. tourists d. mechanics
5. **WB** The wind stopped and we on a boat trip.
a. go b. went c. goes d. gone
6. He is from his holiday in London.
a. back b. black c. bake d. break
7. Last week, I a nice time in New York.
a. took b. had c. gave d. bought
8. They didn't to swim in the sea.
a. wants b. want c. wanted d. wanting
9. Many tourists visit the of the Kings.
a. Volley b. Village c. Valley d. Voice
10. On the Nile, there were a lot of
a. boots b. nuts c. boats d. boxes

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. **WB** Who did you talked to at the break ? (.....)
2. We eat a lot of things at the café yesterday. (.....)
3. It is windy yesterday. (.....)
4. The train leaves to Aswan and arrived there at 3 p.m. (.....)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on : **نحارب شدة في هذا الكتاب**

"A holiday in Paris"

Test

on unit 5

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

تنويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار
إلكترونياً وتصويبه

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :



استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (تصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Where did they go ?
a. To Cairo b. To Siwa c. To Alexandria d. To Luxor
2. They in the lake.
a. sailed b. fished c. swam d. ate
3. They saw and slept in a tent.
a. cats b. dogs c. cows d. camels
4. It was his holiday.
a. favourite b. bad c. happy d. sad

(El Fashn - Beni Suef 2020)

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Sara is talking to a tourist from London.

Ann : Hi, where are you from ?

Sara : I'm from Egypt. And you ?

Ann : I'm (1) London.

Sara : Oh. How did you (2) to Egypt ?

Ann : By plane. I am here with my family.

Sara : What's your father's job ?

Ann : He is a (3)

Sara : A dentist ? And what's your mother's (4) ?

Ann : She is a (5)

Sara : Like my mother, she is a teacher, too.

(Hohia - Sharkia 2020)

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

I will never forget this year's holiday. At first, I thought this holiday would be boring because I was going to the sea with my family.

The beginning was quite **boring** but I went with my family to the sea. We stayed for 3 weeks there! We stayed at a nice hotel but it was quite expensive hotel. I think the hotel was near the sea. It was really comfortable. During the holiday, I met a lot of kind and interesting people. They became my friends. We built sandcastles, swam and visited many places. The weather was great. I enjoyed my holiday.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

2. Why did the writer think the holiday would be boring?

3. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The opposite of the underlined word "**boring**" is _____.

- a. careful b. interested c. interesting d. bad

5. The hotel wasn't _____ the sea.

- a. far from b. near c. behind d. next to

6. At first, the writer thought the holiday would be _____.

- a. boring b. good c. nice d. interesting

(Abou Hamad - Sharkia 2/126)

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- 1. **SB** The _____ says "Don't walk on the grass".
a. signal b. list c. song d. sign
- 2. Salwa _____ a story yesterday.
a. wrote b. writes c. writing d. write
- 3. **SB** My favourite _____ was Al-Azhar Park.
a. time b. place c. team d. food

4. She _____ visit the zoo last week.

- a. doesn't b. don't c. didn't d. wasn't

5. In Paris, we enjoyed going on a _____ trip on the River Seine.

- a. shop b. boat c. ship d. raft

6. What did Mona _____ in her office yesterday?

- a. found b. find c. finds d. finding

7. I'd like to go to the _____ as I like swimming.

- a. mountain b. rock c. sand d. beach

8. Last summer, we swam in the _____ and saw the dolphins show.

- a. sea b. beach c. desert d. pound

9. He didn't go into the cave because he was _____.

- a. frightened b. kind c. short d. brave

10. **WB** We slept in a _____ in the desert.

- a. bed b. tent c. box d. hat

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. They don't visit their uncle a week ago. (_____)
2. **WB** When we arrived, it is very windy. (_____)
3. Hala sleeps for 3 hours yesterday. (_____)
4. He didn't happy at the park yesterday. (_____)

E. Writing

6 **WB** Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on : **مذكراتي من رحلة الصيف**

"A trip you made"

Quiz

on units 1,2,3,4&5

اختبار تراكمي على الوحدات (١، ٢، ٣، ٤ و ٥)

- يقوم المعلم باختيار اختبار مصغر (واحد) من (A) or (B) لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمعلومات الواردة في الوحدات

Model A

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :



- Last month, we _____ our grandparents in Alexandria.
a. visiting b. visited c. visit d. will visit
- A _____ is a group of people who play music together.
a. parent b. chorus c. band d. party
- At break, I play games with my friends in the _____.
a. library b. classroom c. laboratory d. playground
- _____ they got any friends ?
a. Do b. Have c. Can d. Has
- You shouldn't _____ litter in the park.
a. drop b. fall c. follow d. ride

Model B

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :



- All the students like _____ teacher.
a. them b. ours c. their d. his
- A _____ is something you buy to remember a holiday.
a. souvenir b. view c. castle d. culture
- She _____ like swimming.
a. don't b. isn't c. hasn't d. doesn't
- You can use the mouse to _____ on different icons on the computer.
a. tap b. click c. design d. make
- We often _____ shopping at the weekend.
a. go b. make c. give d. have

UNIT 6

Let's eat !

SB pages 54 : 63 WB pages 109 : 115



Objectives

• Reading :

A recipe; reviews of a dish; a text about healthy snacks; a text about food in Africa

• Writing :

A paragraph describing a picture; an online review of a café

• Listening :

A conversation about what food there is; an interview about healthy drinks; a conversation in a café

• Speaking :

Asking and answering about food in a picture; giving advice; ordering food in a café

• Language :

Countable and uncountable nouns; should and shouldn't for advice

• Life Skills :

Decision making; problem solving

• Issues :

Preventative health

• العلامة : تسمى أسئلة كتاب الطالب
• العلامة : تسمى أسئلة كتاب التلميذ

أسئلة
كل وحدة تعلم

• دراسة المفاهيم الجديدة اليومية والاختلاف في نهاية الكتاب
• ملحق (Master your term)

للإشارة
بملاحظة



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

olives (n)	زيتون	saucepan (n)	طاسة
Ingredients (n)	مكونات	hummus (n)	حمص (أطعمة)
biscuits (n)	بسكويت	coconut (n)	جوز الهند
sugar (n)	سكر	crisps (n)	مقرمشات
fridge (n)	ثلاجة	teaspoon (n)	ملعقة شاي
rice pudding (n)	أرز بلبان	raisins (n)	زبيب
cinnamon (n)	قرنفل		

- تلميح** • **Key Vocabulary** هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
 • **Master your Vocabulary** يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق **Master**)
 • **Glossary** لحصيلة أكبر للمزيد من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 1

SB pages 54 & 55 WB page 109

nuts (n)	مكسرات	peppers (n)	فلفل
market (n)	سوق	figs (n)	تين
salt (n)	ملح	again (adv)	مرة أخرى

Lesson 2

SB pages 56 & 57 WB page 110

recipe (n)	وصفة (أطهي)	instructions (n)	تعليمات
minutes (n)	دقائق	quarter (n)	ربع
add (ed) (v)	يضيف	bowl (n)	سلطانية / وعاء
slowly (adv)	بطء	equipment (n)	معدات
stir (red) (v)	يقلب	prefer (red) (v)	يفضل
perfect (n)	ثامر / ممتاز	amount (n)	كمية

half (n)	نصف	cooking (n)	طبخ
share (d) (v)	يتقاسم / يشارك	decide (d) (v)	يقرر
ready (adj)	جاهز / مستعد	plate (n)	تابلو (مستطوح)
review (n)	مقال نقدي		

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
sit down يجلس	sat down	sat down
bring يحضر	brought	brought

Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite العكس
popular شعبي / محبوب	unpopular غير محبوب
quick سريع	slow بطيء
sweet حلو	salty مالح
delicious لذيذ الطعم	terrible كريه / فظيع

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

add	put something together with another thing	يضيف
biscuit	a sweet snack baked in the oven, usually small, flat and round	بسكويت
cheese	a yellow, white or orange food that is made from milk	جبن
cinnamon	a sweet spice used in cooking	قرفة
crisps	hard, dry potato pieces that you eat as a snack	مقرمشات
cup	something you can drink from, about 250 ml	فنجان
equipment	the things you need to do an activity	معدات
fig	a sweet fruit with a purple skin that is very soft inside	تين
fridge	a machine that keeps food and drink cold	ثلاجة
hummus	a soft food made from chickpeas	حمص (طحينة)
ingredient	something you use to make food	مكون / مقدار

nut	a small, dry fruit with a hard shell	جوز الهند
olive	a small, green or black fruit that you eat, or use to make oil	زيتون
pepper	a green, red or yellow vegetable that you cook or eat in a salad	فلفل
raisin	a small, dry grape	زبيب
recipe	instructions on how to make a meal	وصفة طهي
salad	cold, fresh vegetables (not cooked) together in a bowl	سلطة
saucepan	a round container used to cook things	طاسة
stir	move around ingredients, sugar, etc. with a spoon	يقلب
teaspoon	a small spoon of about 5 ml	ملعقة شاي

II Listening and Reading

Listening



on Lesson 1 SB page 55

Nadia : Let's make lunch⁽¹⁾. I think we've got all the food.

Omar : There's some salad⁽²⁾. Is there any hummus⁽³⁾?

Nadia : No, there isn't. But there are some olives⁽⁴⁾.

Omar : There are some peppers⁽⁵⁾, too.

Nadia : Good! Is there any cheese?

Omar : Yes, there is. I've got it.

Nadia : What about figs? Are there any figs⁽⁶⁾?

Omar : No! There aren't any figs.

Nadia : There are some raisins⁽⁷⁾.

Omar : That's good.

Check Vocabulary

1. زبيب 2. ثين 3. فلفل 4. زيتون 5. حمص (طحينة) 6. سلطة 7. بعد وجبة العشاء

Reading

• on Lesson 2 SB pages 56 & 57

Roz Bel Laban : Egyptian Rice Pudding⁽⁷⁾

Ingredients⁽²⁾:

- 1 cup of rice
- 2 cups of water
- 3 cups of milk
- 1 cup of sugar
- $\frac{1}{4}$ a cup of raisins⁽³⁾
- $\frac{1}{4}$ a cup of nuts
- $\frac{1}{4}$ a teaspoon⁽⁴⁾ of cinnamon⁽⁵⁾

Instructions:

1. Put the rice and water in a saucepan⁽⁶⁾.
2. Boil⁽⁷⁾ the rice and water for 20 minutes.
3. Add⁽⁸⁾ the milk slowly as you stir⁽⁹⁾.
4. Add the sugar and stir again.
5. Put the rice pudding into bowls.
6. Put the raisins, cinnamon and nuts on top.
7. Put the rice pudding in the fridge⁽¹⁰⁾.

Reviews of the recipe

Really easy! * * * * *

This is a great recipe⁽¹¹⁾. It's really easy to make. There aren't a lot of ingredients and it's very quick to cook.

Fawzi

OK, but a bit boring⁽¹²⁾ * * *

I liked this rice pudding, but it isn't my favourite. I think there are too many raisins. I don't like them. I prefer rice pudding with coconut⁽¹³⁾.

Hana



Check Vocabulary

(1) ارز بلبن	(2) مكونات	(3) زبيب	(4) ملعقة شاي	(5) قرفة	(6) طاسة	(7) يغلي
(8) يضيف	(9) يقلب	(10) لثاجة	(11) وصفة	(12) مممل قايئ	(13) جوز هند	

Perfect ! * * * * *

There are a lot of rice pudding recipes online, but this is my favourite. It's easy to make and there's enough rice pudding for the **whole** family⁽¹⁴⁾. There's a lot of sugar in the recipe, but I like sweet food.
Nabila



Not like my mum's rice pudding! * *

My mum's rice pudding is delicious, but this rice pudding isn't very good. There's too much sugar and there aren't enough other ingredients.
Salem



Check Vocabulary

(14) الأسرة بالجمع

on Lesson 2 WB page 110

Mrs Amal has **a lot of** friends. Today, she is cooking for ten people. She has **enough** plates for people to eat on, but she does not have **enough** chairs, so her friend brings some. Now all the food is ready, but there is fish and rice for fifteen people, not ten! She has **too much** fish and rice. She decides to ask five more people but they can't all sit down. There are **too many** people and not **enough** chairs!



General Notes on Reading and Listening

1 Let's + inf.

هيا بنا (تستخدم للاقتراح)

ex.: - Let's go swimming.

Let (مفعول + inf.)

تستخدم للاستئذان

- Let us play in the garden, dad, please.

2 What kind of ?

ما نوع

ex.: - What kind of food do you like ?

3 sweet (n) (adj)

حلوى - حلو المذاق

ex.: - Children like eating sweets.

(حلوى)

- There are a lot of sweet things in the fridge.

حلو المذاق

4 recipe / ingredients

• recipe

وصفة أو التعليمات الخاصة بطبخ معين من الطعام

ex.: - What is the recipe for rice pudding ?

• ingredients

مكونات ومقادير نوع طبق معين من الطعام

ex.: - Rice, pasta and onions are the main ingredients of koshari.

5 prefer + (v + ing) / noun

يفضل

ex.: - I prefer watching TV.

- I prefer rice pudding with coconut.

Important expressions & prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

end in ..	ينتهي بـ ..	decide to + (inf.)	يقرر أن
make (food) for ...	يعد الطعام	It's quick to cook.	إنها سريعة الطبخ.
in bold	يخط غامق	a teaspoon of cinnamon	ملعقة صغيرة من القرفة
on top	على القمة	for 20 minutes	لمدة عشرين دقيقة
It's (easy) to (make).	سهلة التحضير	put ... into bowls	يضع ... في أوعية
for the whole family	للأسرة بأكملها		

Exercise on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. A is a kitchen equipment used for keeping food.

- a. bridge b. fridge c. spoon d. oven

2. oil is very healthy for all people.

- a. Meat b. Olive c. Hummus d. Cheese

3. have a lot of fat and salt.

- a. Olives b. Crisps c. Fruits d. Sweets

4. _____ are dried grapes used for some sweet foods like rice pudding.

- a. Nuts b. Biscuits c. Figs d. Raisins

5. There's too much _____ in the tea. I can't drink it.

- a. coffee b. pepper c. sugar d. salt

➤ SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

6. _____ is not an ingredient.

(West Mahalla - Gharbia 2020)

- a. Rice b. Nut c. Stir d. Raisin

7. (WB) There isn't enough _____ to make hot chocolate. (امتحان مجمع الشرقية - مارس ٢٠٢١)

- a. tea b. milk c. coffee d. juice

8. Which of the following is not a cooking verb ?

(El Sof - Giza 2020)

- a. Pudding b. Boil c. Stir d. Add

9. (SB) Put rice and water in a _____ before cooking rice pudding.

- a. bag b. teaspoon c. saucepan d. cup

➤ El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

10. It's delicious to put a teaspoon of _____ on the food.

- a. water b. tea c. rice d. cinnamon

11. The way by which we cook some foods and their ingredients is called a/an _____ .

- a. rhyme b. review c. recipe d. advice

12. My mum's rice pudding is _____. We like it so much.

- a. terrible b. bad c. salty d. delicious

13. Mum _____ the rice and water for 20 minutes on the cooker.

- a. washed b. boiled c. drank d. ate

➤ Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. After my mother cooks the rice pudding, she puts it _____ bowls.

- a. on b. into c. from d. at

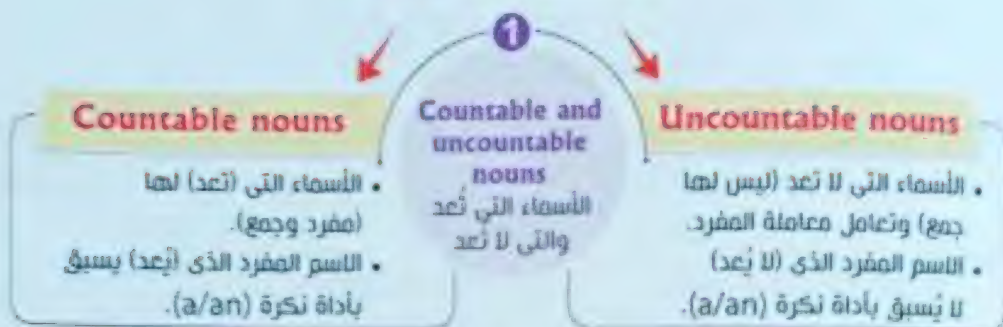
15. I prefer _____ rice pudding with coconut.

- a. eat b. eats c. eating d. ate

16. What _____ of food do you like most ? - Egyptian food.

- a. colour b. age c. kind d. name

III Language



an apple	تفاحة	apples	حمص (طحينة)	water	ماء
a potato	ثمرة بطاطس	potatoes	أثاث	money	نقود
a man	رجل	men	salt	sugar	سكر
an ox	ثور	oxen	advice	news	أخبار
a loaf	رغيف خبز	loaves	cheese	milk	لبن

- ex. - Apples contain vitamins. (اسم يُعد countable noun)
 - Milk is very useful. (اسم لا يُعد uncountable noun)

2

some - any

(a) some

نستخدم (some) بمعنى (بعض) في الحالات الآتية :

1. Countable nouns :

1. مع الأسماء التي تُعد :

some books

some chairs

some eggs

ex. - I have some books.

2. Uncountable nouns :

2. مع الأسماء التي لا تُعد لتشير إلى كمية غير محددة :

some water

some sugar

some salad

ex. - She has some juice.

نستخدم (some) في السؤال في حالة العرض والطلب :

ex. - Would you like some tea ? (عرض)

- Can I have some water, please ? (طلب)

(b) any

تستخدم (any) بمعنى (أى) فى الحالات الآتية :

Negative statements :

• فى الجمل الخبرية المنفية :

(مع الأسماء الجمع التى تعد والأسماء التى لا تعد) :

ex. - There aren't **any vegetables** in the fridge.- There isn't **any meat** in the dish.

Interrogative :

• فى صيغة الاستفهام :

ex. - Do you have **any tomatoes** ? (countable noun يعد اسم)- Is there **any salad** in the dish ? (uncountable noun لا يعد اسم)

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. **SB** There are peppers, too.

(امتحان مجمع القريه - المحلة ٢٠٢١)

a. some b. any c. an d. much

2. **WB** There is some salt, but there any crisps.

a. is b. are c. aren't d. isn't

3. There aren't tablets in our class.

(North Giza 2020)

a. some b. much c. any d. a lot

4. **SB** Is there cheese in the dish ?

a. no b. any c. some d. many

5. We don't have money.

(El Zeisoun - Cairo 2020)

a. many b. some c. any d. do

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. Meat my favourite food.

a. are b. am c. is d. aren't

7. There aren't tomatoes in the fridge.

a. some b. any c. much d. no

8. Can I have orange juice, please ?

a. any b. some c. many d. a lot

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. There isn't some sugar on the table. (East Zagazig - Sharikia 2020) (.....)

2. **SB** There's some cheese. There isn't any olives. ()
3. We haven't got some computers in this room. (Wasaf Alex, 2020) ()
4. **SB** Is there any figs in the fridge? ()
5. **WB** There aren't any milk to make hot chocolate. ()

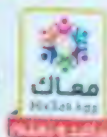
➔ El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. Can I have any water? ()
7. There isn't any canals near our village. ()
8. Are there any sugar? ()

a lot of, enough, too much, too many

We can use these words with countable and uncountable nouns.

يمكن استخدام هذه الكلمات مع الأسماء التي تُعد والأسماء التي لا تُعد.



1 a lot of كثير من

+	countable noun اسم يعد	ex. - There are a lot of books.
+	uncountable noun اسم لا يعد	ex. - There is a lot of sugar.

2 enough كاف

+	countable noun اسم يعد	ex. - Salma has enough pens.
+	uncountable noun اسم لا يعد	ex. - Sama has enough milk.

3 too many عدد أكثر من اللازم

+	countable noun اسم يعد جمع	ex. - There are too many boys.
+	uncountable noun اسم لا يعد	ex. - There is too much sugar.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. **WB** There are too many people and not _____ chairs.
a. much b. any c. enough d. some
2. There is too much _____ in the market today. *(West Mahala - Gharbia 2020)*
a. vegetables b. rice c. fruits d. people
3. Don't put _____ butter in the pan. *(Nasser - Beni Suef 2020)*
a. enough b. too much c. many d. some
4. **WB** I don't like this tea. There is too _____ sugar in it.
a. a lot b. many c. much d. some
5. **SB** Fruit juice has got a lot of sugar, so we shouldn't drink of it.

(امتحان مجمع الغربية - السحلة ٢١ - ٢٠٢٠)

- a. too much b. too many c. many d. enough
6. There's _____ rice for you all. *(El Agami - Alex. 2020)*
a. many b. any c. lot d. enough

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. We'd like to have _____ hummus with kofta.
a. many b. too many c. a lot d. a lot of
8. I have got potatoes in our farm.
a. too much b. much c. too many d. a lot
9. There is _____ milk in the bottle.
a. many b. too many c. enough d. a lot

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. There are enough people on this beach. Let's go to a different one. *(West Tanta - Gharbia 2020) (.....)*
2. **WB** Mrs Amal has too much friends. *(.....)*
3. **SB** There isn't too many milk. *(.....)*
4. **WB** There are too many people and not much chairs. *(.....)*
5. **SB** There is a lot sugar. *(.....)*

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

6. There isn't too many tomatoes. (.....)

7. There are too much apples. (.....)

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 2 SB pages 56 & 57 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ٢٧٠ ، ٢٧١ ثم قم بالتدرب علي إجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

A. Answer the following questions :

- **Critical thinking skill** مهارة التفكير النقدي

1. Why do you think rice pudding is easy to make ?

- Because there are not a lot of ingredients.

- **Giving the main idea** إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

2. What is the main idea of the passage ?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- **Extracting information** استخراج المعلومات

3. Hana likes rice pudding but it isn't her favourite because there too many

a. raisins

b. apples

c. coconuts

d. seeds

2. Writing Corner

محادثة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

1. This recipe is easy to make.

١- إن هذه الوصفة سهلة الصنع.

2. Some people like rice pudding very tasty.

٢- يفضل بعض الناس الأرز باللبن حلو المذاق.

3. Other people like to add some nuts and raisins on the top.

٣- يفضل الآخرون إضافة بعض المكسرات والزبيب على القمة.

4. I prefer rice pudding with coconut.

٤- أنا أفضل الأرز باللبن مع جوز الهند.

5. There's enough rice pudding for the whole family.

٥- يوجد أرز باللبن بما فيه الكفاية للعائلة بأكملها.

B. Building sentences

Read and complete :

likes - a lot of - great - is - are - like

1. This is a recipe.
2. There a lot of rice pudding recipes online.
3. We Roz Bel Laban, Egyptian rice pudding.
4. There aren't ingredients in rice pudding.
5. There a lot of sugar in this recipe.

تنويه

بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

- Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"Egyptian rice pudding"

3. Speaking Corner

معاراة التحدث

1. Asking and answering about foods

السؤال والإجابة عن الأطعمة

Questions



Answers



- | | |
|---|--|
| • Is there any + (اسم مفرد) ؟ | • - Yes, there is. • - No, there isn't. |
| • Is there any cheese ؟ هل يوجد أى جبن ؟ | • - Yes, there is. نعم، يوجد. |
| • Are there any + (اسم جمع) ؟ | • - Yes, there are. |
| • Are there any olives ؟ هل يوجد أى زيتون ؟ | • - No, there aren't. |
| | • - No, there aren't. لا، لا يوجد. |

2. What food (do / don't) you like ?

ما الطعام الذى (تجبه / لا تجبه) ؟

Questions



Answers



- | | |
|--|---|
| • What food do you like ?
ما الطعام الذى تجبه ؟ | • - I like nuts. أحب المكسرات. |
| • What food don't you like ?
ما الطعام الذى لا تجبه ؟ | • I don't like olives. لا أحب الزيتون. |

General Exercises

On

LESSONS 1 & 2

• Understand • Apply • Create



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (الخصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. There are a lot of rice pudding _____, online.
a. recipes b. books c. ingredients d. instructions
2. There is enough rice pudding for the whole _____.
a. girls b. family c. boys d. teachers
3. There is a lot of _____ in the recipe.
a. cinnamon b. nuts c. milk d. sugar
4. I like sweet _____.
a. raisins b. cinnamon c. food d. milk

(West Tanta - Gharbia 2020)

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Mona and Hend are making lunch.

Mona : I'm hungry. Let's make lunch.

Hend : OK. There is some salad. Is there any hummus ?

Mona : No, there isn't, but there (1) _____ some olives.

Hend : There are some peppers, (2) _____.

Mona : Good. Is there (3) _____ cheese ?

Hend : Yes, there is.

Mona : What about figs ? Are (4) _____ any figs ?

Hend : (5) _____, there aren't any figs.

Mona : Are there any raisins ?

Hend : Yes.

(Beni Mazar-Menia 2020)

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. There is some cheese in the fridge, but there _____ any tomatoes.
a. aren't b. is c. isn't d. are
2. "_____" is the opposite of "difficult".
a. Popular b. Top c. Quick d. Easy

3. **WB** There any olives at the market today.
a. isn't b. aren't c. is d. are
4. You can have rice after your meal as a dessert.
a. cinnamon b. pudding c. saucepan d. teaspoon
5. **WB** We don't need to share because there is rice for everyone.
a. enough b. too many c. many d. a lot
6. The main of salad are tomatoes, cucumbers and onions.
a. kinds b. types c. ingredients d. colours
7. A means a set of instructions for cooking food.
a. bill b. ball c. hill d. recipe
8. You can put the raisins, and nuts on top of rice pudding.
a. olives b. saucepan c. cinnamon d. salad
9. **WB** To is to move around ingredients, sugar, etc. with a spoon.
a. add b. cook c. stir d. bring
10. Put the food in the to be cool.
a. fridge b. heater c. cooker d. oven

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. **SB** No, there aren't some figs. (.....)
2. There is many water in the jug. (.....)
3. **SB** Are there any biscuits ? - No, there isn't. (.....)
4. Are there any cinnamon in this recipe ? (.....)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on : **مطاب عنه في رواية الكتاب**

"Rice pudding"



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

fizzy drinks (n)	مشروبات غازية	snack (n)	وجبة خفيفة
taste (d) (v) (n)	يتذوق / طعم	cooking pot (n)	وعاء للطبخ
teeth (n)	أسنان	dinner time (n)	وقت العشاء
meal (n)	وجبة	tagine (n)	طاجين (أكلة في دولة المغرب)
onions (n)	بصل	pasta (n)	مكرونه
chocolate (n)	شيكولاتة	vegetables (n)	خضروات

- تلميح** ▪ **Key Vocabulary** هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
 ▪ **Master your Vocabulary** يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
 ▪ **Glossary** لحصيلة أكبر (للمزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب.

Lesson 3

SB pages 58 & 59 WB page 111

advice (n)	نصيحة	weight (n)	وزن
way (v)	طريقة / وسيلة	diagram (n)	رسم توضيحي
fat (n)	دهن	type (n)	نوع
fantastic (adj)	رائع	illness (n)	مرض

Lesson 4

SB page 60 WB page 112

traditional (adj)	تقليدي	spices (n)	توابل
nyama na irio	(نياما نايريو)	amazing (adj)	رائع / مذهل
طبق لحم مع بطاطس مطهى على نار هادئة		shepherd's pie	فطيرة الراعي
kapenta	(كابنتا)	لحم بالخضار والبطاطس (إنجلترا)	
طبق أسماك مشهور في زيمبابوي		dry (ied) (v)	يجفف
الطهي على نار هادئة / طاجين لحم مع خضار (stew)			

Kenya

wonderful (adj)

دولة كينيا

South Africa

دولة جنوب إفريقيا

زائير

Zimbabwe (n)

دولة زيمبابوي

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present المصارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
come يأتي	came	come

Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite العكس
bad for ضار لـ	good for مفيد لـ
careful حريص	careless مهمل
hungry جائع	full up شبعان
healthy صحي	unhealthy غير صحي

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

bean	a long, narrow green vegetable that you usually eat cooked	فول
cake	a sweet food that you bake in the oven	كعك (كيك)
carrot	a long, narrow, orange vegetable that grows in the ground	جزر
chocolate	a sweet food that is made from cocoa beans	شيكولاتة
fat	natural oil in food	دهون
fizzy drinks	a drink that has bubbles and a lot of sugar	مشروبات غازية
fruit juice	the liquid from a fruit that you can drink	عصير فاكهة
salt	a natural, white ingredient that can come from the sea, it makes food taste better	ملح
snack	a small amount of food that you eat between meals	وجبة خفيفة
spices	parts of a plant that you can put in food to give it a special taste	توابل
stew	a meal made with meat and vegetables in one pot	طاجن لحم مع خضار
vegetable	a plant you can eat e.g. a carrot	خضار

II Listening and Reading

Listening

• on Lesson 3 SB page 59

Presenter : It's important to eat the **right**⁽¹⁾ things, but we shouldn't **forget**⁽²⁾ about what we drink. Dr Randa Zaki is here to tell us more. Dr Randa, what should we drink ?

Dr Randa : Well, we should drink a lot of water. Water is **great**⁽³⁾ because it hasn't got any **fat**⁽⁴⁾ or sugar.

Presenter : OK, so we should drink more water. And which drinks are **bad for**⁽⁵⁾ us ?

Dr Randa : Some drinks have a lot of sugar. We shouldn't drink these because they are bad for our bodies and they are bad for our teeth.

Presenter : So we shouldn't have drinks with a lot of sugar. Some **fizzy drinks**⁽⁶⁾ don't have any sugar. Are they OK ?

Dr Randa : No, fizzy drinks are always bad for our teeth, even when they don't have sugar.

Presenter : So we shouldn't have fizzy drinks. Are there any drinks good for our teeth ?

Dr Randa : Yes, milk is good for our teeth. We should **try**⁽⁷⁾ to drink a glass of milk every day.



Check Vocabulary

(1) الصحيح / مناسب (2) ينسى (3) رائع / مثير (4) دهون (5) ضار لـ (6) مشروبات غازية (7) يحاول

• on Lesson 4 WB page 112

Boy 1 : In England, people often have a traditional meal called shepherd's pie. You make it with meat, carrots and other vegetables with potatoes on top. It is wonderful. My favourite meal is shepherd's pie, and then chocolate ice cream!



Reading

on Lesson 3 SB page 58

Healthy Snacks⁽¹⁾

Everyone loves snacks! But some snacks are bad for us. What is **the best way⁽²⁾** to enjoy healthy snacks?

Crisps and cakes

It is OK to eat crisps and cakes sometimes, but you should not eat too many of them. Crisps have a lot of fat and **salt⁽³⁾**. Cakes, **chocolate⁽⁴⁾** and biscuits have a lot of fat and sugar. Too much of this type of food is bad for our **bodies⁽⁵⁾**.

Fantastic fruit

Fruit is a great snack! It is very good for us and most people like the sweet taste. You should eat between two and four **pieces⁽⁶⁾** of fruit a day.



Beans and vegetables⁽⁷⁾

Beans and vegetables do not have much sugar or fat. They are very good for us, so we should eat a lot of them. Snacks like **hummus⁽⁸⁾** with carrot and **pepper⁽⁹⁾** are **delicious⁽¹⁰⁾**.

Be careful!

We should be careful, even with healthy foods. Fruit juice has got a lot of sugar so we should not drink too much of it. **Olives⁽¹¹⁾**, meat and fish sometimes have a lot of salt.

Check Vocabulary

(1) وجبات خفيفة	(2) أفضل طريقة	(3) ملح	(4) شوكولاتة	(5) أجسام	(6) شطع
(7) خضروات	(8) حمص مطبوخة	(9) فلفل	(10) لذيذ	(11) زيتون	

on Lesson 4 SB page 60

Food in Africa

Egypt has a lot of interesting food, but my favourite meal is **koshari**. It is a delicious meal with rice, pasta and tomatoes. It is very popular. Many people like it.

Marwa



I live in **Morocco**⁽¹⁾. **Tagine**⁽²⁾ is a traditional meal from my country. It is a stew with meat, vegetables, fruit and spices. The taste is amazing! The name tagine comes from the cooking pot for this food.

Hamza

In Kenya, people often make nyama na irio for dinner. It is a **stew with meat and potatoes**⁽³⁾. It is wonderful! I love eating it after school when I am very hungry!

Makena

Kapenta⁽⁴⁾ is a **popular**⁽⁵⁾ type of fish in Zimbabwe. We catch the fish from the lake and dry it in the sun. Kapenta is very good for you, so you can eat it every day. We often cook it with tomatoes and **onions**⁽⁶⁾. It is great!

Bradley



Check Vocabulary

يعمل (1) / شاعبي / مديوي (2) / كابتنتا / أكلة سمك في زيمبابوي (3) / طاجين من البطاطس واللحم يطهى على نار هادئة (4) / طاجين (5) / دولة المغرب (6)



Videoscript

Lesson 3 SB page 58

Narrator: What did you eat for lunch today? Did you eat some **falafel**⁽¹⁾ or a **chicken salad**⁽²⁾?

Or perhaps you enjoyed some **delicious**⁽³⁾ meat and rice.

And what did you drink? Maybe you had some water, a cup of tea or some nice orange juice.

The food that we eat today is **similar to**⁽⁴⁾ the food that the **ancient Egyptians**⁽⁵⁾ ate a long time ago. The ancient Egyptians ate a lot of bread. In fact, people **believe**⁽⁶⁾ that the ancient Egyptians made the first bread in the world.

Check Vocabulary

يعتقد (1) / قدماء المصريين (2) / مشابه لـ (3) / لذيذ (4) / سلطة دجاج (5) / طعامية (6)

The ancient Egyptians used the **land**⁽⁷⁾ near the **River Nile**⁽⁸⁾ to **grow**⁽⁹⁾ a lot of different fruit and vegetables.

They also grew enough **wheat**⁽¹⁰⁾ to make bread. Bread was a very important food in ancient Egypt. Scientists found some bread in the **tomb**⁽¹¹⁾ of Mentuhotep the Second in Luxor. It was 4,000 years old!

Pharaohs⁽¹²⁾ and other important people ate bread with a lot of fruit, such as figs and **dates**⁽¹³⁾. They also had it with **honey**⁽¹⁴⁾. Bread is still important today. From this bread in Egypt today to **bagels**⁽¹⁵⁾ in the USA and **baguettes**⁽¹⁶⁾ in France, people all around the world love it at all times of the day.

Check Vocabulary

(7) أرض	(8) نهر النيل	(9) يزرع	(10) قصب	(11) مقبرة	(12) الفراعنة
(13) بلح	(14) عسل	(15) نوع من الخبز على شكل دوائر	(16) خبز فرنساوي		



General Notes on Reading and Listening

1 everyone + فعل مفرد

ex.: - Everyone loves snacks. They love eating the snacks between meals. ولكن لاحظ عند التعويض عليها بضمير نستخدم ضمير الجمع (they) وفعل جمع.

2 enjoy / like / love + (inf. + ing) / noun

يتبع هذه الأفعال (inf + ing) أو اسم

ex.: - I enjoy eating healthy snacks.
- I love snacks.

3 a piece of / pieces of + uncountable noun

ex.: - I want a piece of bread.
- I eat four pieces of fruit a day.

4 fruit + فعل مفرد

ex.: Fruit is a great snack.

5 stew (n/v)

* stew (n)

طعام مطهو على نار هادئة/ طاجن لحم بالخضار


ex.: Tagine is a stew with meat, vegetables and spices.

* stew (v)

يطهو على نار هادئة

ex.: I left the meat to stew.**6** need to = should

يجب

ex.:  You need to have healthy foods that help your body to grow.**7** catch

معالى مختلفة للفاعل

catch fish يصطاد سمك

catch a thief يقبض على لص

catch a ball يمسك كرة

catch a bus يلحق بالأتوبيس

Important expressions & prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

cook (something) **with** ...

يطهو شيء مع شيء آخر ..

give advice **on** ...

يعطي نصيحة عن

It's the best way **to** ...

أفضل طريقة لـ

stop eating (something) ..

It's OK **to** ...

من الأفضل أن

يتوقف عن تناول شيء نهائيًا ..

even **with** ...

حتى مع

Be careful !

احترس / احذر !

It's a good idea **to** ...

إنها فكرة جيدة أن

look after

يعتني بـ

Exercise on Vocabulary

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

➞ Key vocabulary

1. Fruit and give us a lot of vitamins.

a. cakes

b. vegetables

c. rice

d. biscuits

2. Tagine is the name of a and a cooking pot in Morocco.

a. mile

b. dress

c. drink

d. meal

3. Most people like drinking drinks with their meals.

a. busy

b. dizzy

c. fizzy

d. crazy

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

4. We should be careful, even with foods. (South Giza 2020)
 a. healthy b. unhealthy c. fast d. bad
5. My father always has a before he goes to bed. (Rasheed - Beheira 2020)
 a. breakfast b. lunch c. snack d. snake
6. SB has got rice and pasta in it. It's an Egyptian meal.
 a. Tagine b. Kapenta c. Koshari d. Burger
7. SB Kapenta is a of fish in Zimbabwe. (امتحان مجمع إسكندرية - المصطفى ٢٠٢١)
 a. colour b. tape c. type d. size
8. give food a delicious taste. (Kafri El Dawar - Beheira 2020)
 a. Cultures b. Spices c. Reviews d. Spaces

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

9. It's 7 p.m. Don't leave the house as it's time. We're hungry.
 a. play b. breakfast c. dinner d. lunch
10. Tagine includes meat in it. It's a meal in Morocco.
 a. modern b. traditional c. careful d. thirty
11. Our science teacher drew a on the board to show the experiment.
 a. sheep b. dog c. diagram d. river
12. Koshari doesn't contain, but it's a very delicious meal.
 a. pasta b. tomatoes c. meat d. rice
13. The of kapenta is very delicious. I prefer eating it.
 a. list b. test c. taste d. least

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. You should eating fast food.
 a. stop b. drop c. fall d. drive
15. Eating healthy food is the best to be fit.
 a. road b. form c. way d. shape
16. You should after your teeth and don't eat much chocolate.
 a. make b. take c. look d. give



Language



Giving advice using "should & shouldn't"

إعطاء النصيحة باستخدام (should & shouldn't) بمعنى ينبغي أن / لا ينبغي أن
تستخدم الصيغ التالية لإعطاء النصيحة.

should

shouldn't

Subject + should + inf.
الفاعل المصدر

ينبغي أن «تستخدم للنصح بفعل شيء جيد أو مفيد»

ex. You should eat a lot of fruit and vegetables.

Subject + shouldn't + inf.
الفاعل المصدر

لا ينبغي أن «تستخدم للنصح بعدم فعل شيء غير جيد أو غير مفيد»

ex. You shouldn't eat too many crisps and cakes.

Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

Yes / No question

Should + subject + inf. ?
الفاعل المصدر

ex. Should we eat lots of fish ?

- Yes, you should.

- No, you shouldn't.

Wh-question

Question word + should + subject + inf. ?
الفاعل المصدر

ex. What should I eat ?

- You should eat fruits and vegetables.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. You should a lot of fruit and vegetables. (Matai - Menia 2020)

- a. eat b. ate c. to eat d. eating

2. WB The saucepan is very hot. You touch it.

- a. shouldn't b. can c. haven't d. should

3. SB We drink a glass of milk every day. (امتحان مجمع الشرقية - مشهور ٢٠٢١)

- a. shouldn't b. can't c. mustn't d. should

4. You help the poor.

(Abou Humus - Beheira 2020)

- a. should b. shouldn't c. couldn't d. shall

5. We have drinks with a lot of sugar. (El Sheikh Zowayed - North Sinia 2020)

- a. should b. shouldn't c. must d. have to

6. You should your password secret.

(Rashed - Beheira 2020)

- a. keep b. keeps c. keeping d. kept

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

7. When it is windy, you go out.

- a. should b. must c. shouldn't d. might

8. What should I to get high marks ?

- a. do b. did c. does d. done

9. You shouldn't under water for too long.

- a. stayed b. stays c. stay d. staying

10. You drink water from the canal.

- a. should b. shouldn't c. may d. must

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

SB , WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

1. SB You should have fizzy drinks. (.....)

2. WB You shouldn't eating snacks in the class. (.....)

3. You should to clean your teeth before sleeping. (Port Said 2020) (.....)

4. You should eat too much chocolate. (Al Azhar - the East area 2020) (.....)

➤ El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

5. You shouldn't look after your health. ()

6. What should I did to be healthy? ()

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 4 SB page 60 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة رقم ٢٨٥ ، ٢٨٦ ثم
قم بالتدرب علي إدارة بعض أسئلة فطحة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

Answer the following questions :

- **Giving the main idea** إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

- "Food in Africa"

- **Extracting information** استخراج المعلومات

2. What is the traditional meal in Morocco ?

.....

- **Critical thinking skill** مهارة التفكير النقدي

3. What do you think is the best meal for the Egyptians in this passage ?
Why ?

.....

2. Writing Corner

مهارات الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

اقبل لتساعدك علي كتابة مقالة إنشائية.

1. Some snacks are bad for health. ١. بعض الوجبات الخفيفة ضارة بالصحة.

2. You shouldn't eat many crisps and cakes.

٢. لا ينبغي أن تأكل الكثير من المقرمشات والكعك.

3. Fruit is a very good snack as it's good for bodies.

٣. الفاكهة وجبة خفيفة جيدة لأنها مفيدة للجسام.

4. Some snacks like hummus with carrots are delicious and healthy.

٤. بعض الوجبات الخفيفة مثل الحمص (الطحينة) مع الجزر لذيذة وصحية.

B. Building sentences

⊙ Read and complete :

love – should – a lot – loves – shouldn't – is

1. Heba snacks.
2. Fruit a great snack.
3. You drink too much of fruit juice.
4. Crisps have of fat and salt.
5. You eat between two and four pieces of fruit a day.

تلميح

بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات
اللغوية الخاصة بالدرسين
قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

- Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"Healthy and unhealthy snacks"

3. Speaking Corner

ممارسة التحدث

Asking and answering about good and bad foods

السؤال والإجابة عن الأطعمة الجيدة والضارة

Questions



- Which snacks are good for you ?
- أي من الوجبات الخفيفة مفيدة لك ؟
- Which snacks are bad for you ?
- أي من الوجبات الخفيفة ضارة بك ؟

Answers



- Fruits are good for me.
الفواكه مفيدة لي.
- Chocolate and biscuits are bad for me.
الشيكولاته والبسكويت أطعمة ضارة بي.

Self Assessment Activity

قيم نفسك.



- ◀ ليتعرف الطالب على مدى إتقانه لأهداف الوحدة.
- ◀ في حالة عدم اجتيازه يتم الانتقال إلى صفحة Review لمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى.

General Exercises

On

LESSONS **3 & 4**

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Heba and her mother are talking about healthy and unhealthy snacks.

Mother : What are you eating, Heba ?

Heba : I'm eating (1) _____.

Mother : But they're not (2) _____ for your teeth.

Heba : But I like sweets, mum.

Mother : I know, but you shouldn't eat too many sweets.

Heba : (3) _____, mum ?

Mother : Because they have too much (4) _____.

Heba : What (5) _____ I eat ?

Mother : You should eat fruits and vegetables.

Heba : OK, I'll have an apple.

(West Zagazig-Sharkia 2020)

2 Read the following, then answer the questions :

The food that we eat today is similar to the food that the ancient Egyptians ate a long time ago. The ancient Egyptians ate a lot of bread. In fact, people believe that the ancient Egyptians made the first bread in the world. The ancient Egyptians used the land near the Nile to grow a lot of different fruit and vegetables. They also grew enough wheat to make bread. Bread was a very important food in ancient Egypt. Scientists found some bread in the tomb of Mentuhotep the Second in Luxor. It was four thousand years old. Pharaohs and other important people ate bread with a lot of fruit such as figs and dates. They also had it with honey. Bread is still important today.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What is this passage about ?

2. Who made the first bread in the world ?

3. Where did the ancient Egyptians grow fruit and vegetables ?

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to _____.

a. date

b. fruit

c. bread

d. honey

5. The bread in the tomb was _____ years old.

a. 40000

b. 4000

c. 400

d. 1400

6. The opposite of the underlined word "similar" is (El Saf-Giza 2020)
 a. different b. small c. difficult d. enough

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **58** We eat too much cake. It has too much sugar in it.
 a. should b. shouldn't c. must d. can
2. Crisps have a lot of and salt.
 a. chocolate b. fat c. sugar d. fruit
3. **72** You should always your teeth before you go to bed.
 a. cleans b. cleaned c. clean d. cleaning
4. Tagine is a meal in Morocco.
 a. dry b. traditional c. unhealthy d. bad
5. You should drink a of milk a day.
 a. glass b. glasses c. tube d. bag
6. They often kapenta in Zimbabwe with tomatoes and onions.
 a. describe b. taste c. catch d. cook
7. To be fit, what should I ?
 a. do b. does c. did d. doing
8. We can with our tongues.
 a. smell b. taste c. touch d. look
9. Rice, pasta and tomatoes are the main of koshari.
 a. recipes b. ingredients c. members d. fans
10. To means to cook something slowly in a liquid.
 a. bake b. throw c. stew d. roast

4 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. You shouldn't eat healthy food. (.....)
2. We should have fizzy drinks. (.....)
3. You shouldn't plays in busy roads. (.....)
4. Hurry up to catching the bus. (.....)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your favourite dish"



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

café (n)	كافيتريا / مقهى	customer (n)	زبون
menu (n)	قائمة طعام	large salad (n)	سلطة حجم كبير
pounds (n)	جنيحات	waiter (n)	جرسون
chef (n)	رئيس طهاة		

- تلميح** • **Key Vocabulary** هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
 • **Master your Vocabulary** يقضي على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (ملحق Master).
 • **Glossary** لحصيلة أكبر (المزيد) من المفردات اللغوية نهاية الكتاب

Lesson 5

SB page 61 WB page 113

apple juice (n)	عصير تفاح	order (ed) (v), (n)	يطلب / طلب
-----------------	-----------	---------------------	------------

Lesson 6

SB page 62 WB page 114

walls (n)	جدران	soon (adv)	سريعا / في القريب العاجل
basbusa (n)	بسبوسة	include (d) (v)	يشمل / يتضمن
kunafa (n)	كنافة	details (n)	تفاصيل
weekend (n)	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	support (ed)(v)	يدعم / يساعد
fresh (adj)	طازج	reasons (n)	أسباب / مبررات
hope (d) (v)	يأمل / يتمنى	description (n)	وصف
sweets (n)	حلوى		

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
cost يتكلف	cost	cost
grow ينمو / يكبر	grew	grown
leave يغادر	left	left
choose يختار	chose	chosen

Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Opposite العكس
much كثير الكمية	little قليل (الكمية)
many كثير العدد	few قليل (العدد)
real حقيقي / واقعي	unreal غير حقيقي / غير واقعي

II Listening and Reading



Listening



• on Lesson 5 SB page 61

Assistant : Hello. What would you like today ?

Customer : I'd like a cheese and tomato pizza, please.

Assistant : OK. Anything else ?

Customer : Yes, a salad, please.

Assistant : Small or large ?

Customer : Small, please.

Assistant : And would you like any drinks ?

Customer : Have you got any fruit juice ?

Assistant : Yes, we've got apple juice and orange juice.

Customer : I'd like an orange juice, please.

Assistant : Is that everything ?

Customer : Yes, it is.

Assistant : That's 105 pounds, please.

Customer : Thank you, here you are.



Reading

• on Lesson 5 WB page 113

Waiter : Hello. What would you like today ?

You : Hello. Have you got any pizza ?

Waiter : Yes. Small or large ?

You : Large, please.

Waiter : What would you like to drink ?

You : I'd like some **cola**, please.

Waiter : Anything else ?

You : No, thank you. How much are these ?

Waiter : That's **thirty** pounds, please.

You : Thank you, here you are.

• on Lesson 6 SB page 62

City Café

Great visit ! *****

Review by : Sara

I visited this café last **weekend**⁽¹⁾ with my mum, my dad and my brother, Ashraf. We chose this café for lunch because it looked very nice. The **walls**⁽²⁾ were green and white and there were big **windows**⁽³⁾. (I love looking out of the window and watching the city).

Ashraf and I **both**⁽⁴⁾ had rice for lunch. I had fish with rice and he had chicken. My dad had fish with rice, too, and mum had a **salad**⁽⁵⁾.

It's very healthy ! We all liked our food.

After lunch, Ashraf and I had cakes. This was the **part**⁽⁶⁾ we enjoyed most! There were a lot of different cakes and they all looked **delicious**⁽⁷⁾! I chose **basbousa**⁽⁸⁾ and Ashraf had **kunafa**⁽⁹⁾. They were amazing!!!
I'd like to visit this café **again**⁽¹⁰⁾ (very soon)!



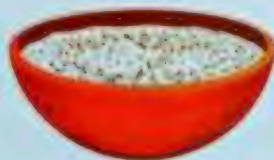
Check Vocabulary

(1) عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	(2) جدران / حوائط	(3) نوافذ	(4) كلاهما	(5) سلطة
(6) جزء	(7) لذيذ	(8) بسبوسة	(9) كنافة	(10) مرة أخرى

• on Lesson 6 WB page 114

1. I want to write about an amazing meal

I remember. I visited my cousins in Damietta last summer with my dad, mother and sister. They took us to a café for lunch. It was near the beach and it had big windows. (It was wonderful watching the boats on the water.)



2. I had my favourite meal, koshari. I love koshari but this was different than usual. It was delicious. My family and cousins all had fish from the sea. We all liked our food.

3. We then all had Egyptian Rice Pudding. There was not a lot of sugar in this recipe and it was not too sweet or unhealthy.

4. It was a wonderful meal and I would like to visit this café again (one day)!



• on Lesson 6 WB page 114

A meal which I always remember is fish and rice. At a great restaurant in Alexandria, I went there with my family. The restaurant was very near the sea so the fish was very fresh. We chose the fish and the chef cooked it for us. My parents ate their favourite fish and my brother enjoyed watching the boats on the sea. I hope we can go back to the restaurant again soon.



General Notes on Reading and Listening

1 'd like / 'd love / 'd prefer → (to + inf.)

يود / يرغب في

ex.: - What would you like to have?

- I'd prefer to have cheese pizza.

* I'd like some + noun.

ex.: - I'd like some chicken pizza.

2 meal - snack

* meal (lunch وجبة الغداء dinner وجبة العشاء breakfast الإفطار وجبة رئيسية)

ex.: I always have a meal with my family in the evening.

* snack

وجبة خفيفة (بين الوجبات)

ex.: We can buy a snack from this restaurant.

3 taste

• taste (v) (n)

يتذوق / مذاق

ex.: - I taste with my tongue.

- The taste of koshari is amazing.

• taste + (adj)

طعمه / مذاقه

ex.: Koshari tastes delicious.

4 café / coffee

• café

مقهى (المكان)

ex.: - Ayman always sits at this café to have his morning tea.

• coffee

القهوة (المشروب)

ex.: Ashraf never drinks coffee. It makes him awake all the time.

5 menu / list

• menu

قائمة الطعام

ex.: The waiter brought us the menu to choose the food we'd like to eat.

• list

قائمة أشياء أو أسماء

ex.: Write the things you need in a list before going shopping.

Important expressions & prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

look very nice	تبدو لطيفة جدًا	have fish with rice	يتناول السمك مع الأرز
look out of the window	ينظر من الشباك	come to	يصل إلى
the part we enjoyed most	الجزء الذي استمتعنا به كثيرًا	different than usual	مختلف عن المعتاد
Here you are.	تفضل.	go back to	يعود إلى
make sure	يتأكد	see a doctor	يلتزم الطبيب

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

- Our _____ enjoy having our different kinds of pizza every day.
a. waiters b. pupils c. customers d. patient
- The _____ works in the restaurant.
a. waiter b. doctor c. teacher d. nurse
- This meal costs 150 Egyptian _____.
a. pools b. pounds c. ponds d. tickets
- Most young people in Egypt like to meet their friends in a _____.
a. hospital b. school c. café d. bank

SB, WB and Previous Exams تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتدريبات والامتحانات السابقة

- WB** A _____ which I always remember is fish and rice.
a. mail b. mile c. meal d. male
- SB** We stayed on the _____ and enjoyed the sea.

a. beach b. desert c. moon d. valley

- First, look at the _____ then choose your dish.
a. foot b. menu c. meat d. plate

(امتحان مجمع القاهرة - مصر الجديدة ٢٠٢١)
(El Riad - Kafir El Shikh 2020)

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات كتاب المعاصر

- _____ is my favourite dessert.
a. Tomato b. Kunafa c. Bread d. Salad
- I eat a lot of olives because they are _____ for me.
a. bad b. unhealthy c. good d. ugly
- You should _____ the topic sentence with other sentences in a paragraph.
a. include b. support c. forget d. hope
- A** : Are you ready to _____, sir? **B** : Yes, I'd like chicken pizza.
a. cook b. order c. cut d. sell

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

- Children should be careful and not to look _____ low windows.
a. of b. out c. out of d. away from
- The _____ we enjoyed most of our picnic is the open air.
a. port b. pound c. part d. party

Skills Corner



كيفية التعامل مع مهارات (القراءة - الكتابة - التحدث) في الورقة الامتحانية لكل درس على حده.

1. Reading Corner

قم بقراءة Reading on lesson 6 WB page 114 من كتاب المعاصر صفحة ٢٩٨ ، ٢٩٩ ثم قم بالتدرب علي اجابة بعض أسئلة قطعة الفهم طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية.

A. Answer the following questions :

- **Giving the main idea** إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية
 1. Give a suitable title for this passage.
 - An amazing meal in Damietta.
- **Critical thinking skill** مهارة التفكير النقدي
 2. Do you think they had healthy dessert ? Why / Why not ?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in a context

تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص

3. The word "....." means instructions on how to make a meal,
- a. usual b. recipe c. delicious d. café

2. Writing Corner

مهارة الكتابة

A. Read the sentences

جمل تساعدك علي كتابة مقرة إنشائية.

1. I visited a great restaurant with my mum and dad yesterday.
 ١. لقد زرت مطعم رائع مع والدتي ووالدي أمس.
2. It was near the sea.
 ٢. كان بجوار البحر.
3. I had my favourite meal.
 ٣. لقد تناولت وجيتي المفضلة.
4. I had fish and rice.
 ٤. لقد تناولت السمك والأرز.
5. The fish was very fresh.
 ٥. لقد كان السمك طازج جداً.
6. We chose the fish and the chef cooked it for us.
 ٦. لقد قمنا باختيار الأسماك وقام الشيف بطهي هذه الأسماك لنا.

B. Building sentences

⊙ Read and complete :

was - hope - in - on - to visit - My

ملويه

بعد دراسة القواعد والمفردات
اللغوية الخاصة بالتدريس
قم بالتدريب على بناء الجملة

1. favourite meal is fish with rice.
2. It a wonderful meal.
3. I would like this restaurant again.
4. We enjoyed watching the boats the sea.
5. I we can go back to this restaurant again soon.

C. Practise by yourself

تدرب على كتابة فقرة إنشائية.

- Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"Your favourite meal"

3. Speaking Corner

معاراة التحدث

1. Ordering food in a café

طلب طعام في كافيتريا

Waiter

جرسون

Customer

زبون

- What would you like to have ?
ماذا تحب أن تتناول ؟
- Have you got any ?
هل يوجد لديكم أى ؟
- Anything else ?
هل تريد شيئاً آخر ؟
- That's + رقم + pounds.
إنها تبلغ جنيهات.

- I'd like to have + (اسم طعام / مشروب) .
أرغب في تناول
- We've got
لدينا
- Here you are.
تفضل.
- Yes, I'd like some meat.
- No, thanks.
- How much does it cost ?
كم الثمن ؟

إعطاء النصيحة

2. Giving advice

You الفاعل

+

should

/

shouldn't

+

المصدر Inf.

- ex.: - You should eat a lot of fruit and vegetables.
- You shouldn't eat too many crisps and cakes.

General Exercises

On

LESSONS 5 & 6

• Understand • Apply • Create



1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (انصتص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. When did they visit the café ?
a. Last week. b. Last month. c. Last year. d. Last weekend.
2. The writer visited the café with his
a. cousins b. friends c. family d. uncle
3. They had in this café.
a. snack b. lunch c. dinner d. breakfast
4. The were green and white.
a. doors b. windows c. walls d. tables

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed is at a restaurant.

Waiter : Hello. What would you like today ?

Ahmed : Hello. (1) you got any pizzas ?

Waiter : Yes, small or large ?

Ahmed : (2) , please. I am not very hungry.

Waiter : (3) would you like to drink ?

Ahmed : I'd like some orange (4) , please.

Waiter : Anything else ?

Ahmed : No, thank you. How much are these ?

Waiter : That's 50 (5) , please.

Ahmed : Thank you. Here you are.

(Gerga - Souhag 2020)

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. What does Khalid like to ?
a. visit b. visits c. visiting d. visited
2. Where is the , please ? I want to order a meal.
a. menu b. list c. diary d. ticket

3. A works in a hotel or a restaurant.
a. chef b. chief c. chair d. cooker
4. What would you like to ? - I want fish and rice.
a. make b. stick c. have d. teach
5. Fruit juice has got sugar in it.
a. many b. too many c. a lot d. too much
6. The boy like his brother. They are twins.
a. makes b. bakes c. looks d. takes
7. You follow the school rules.
a. shouldn't b. should c. mustn't d. can't
8. Children should be and don't look out of low windows.
a. careless b. careful c. unhealthy d. bored
9. We went to a new to have a drink yesterday.
a. café b. coffee c. pool d. island
10. If you are ill, you should a doctor.
a. see b. go c. deal d. drive

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. WB You should to clean your teeth in the morning. (.....)
2. We shouldn't eat fruit and vegetables. (.....)
3. What should Ali did to win the race ? (.....)
4. The class has got too much pupils. (.....)

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on : مخاطبته في نهاية الكتاب

"A visit to a café"

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).



- Tagine is a traditional meal in
a. Italy b. Morocco c. Egypt d. Athens
- Mazen likes
a. koshari b. tagine c. meat d. chicken
- The taste of tagine is !
a. boring b. amazed c. bored d. amazing
- The name comes from the cooking for this food.
a. pot b. pan c. plate d. dish

(El Hamul-Kaf El Sheikh 2020)

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Rana and Maya are talking about their favourite food.

Rana : What is your favourite food ?

Maya : It is (1)

Rana : Koshari ! Fantastic. What are its (2) ?

Maya : (3) , lentils, tomatoes and pasta.

Rana : Is it (4) ?

Maya : Yes, it is very delicious.

Rana : What else do you like ?

Maya : I enjoy (5) fish. What about you ?

Rana : I like kofta very much.

Maya : Wonderful !

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Everyone loves snacks! But some snacks are bad for us. What is the best way to enjoy healthy snacks ?

It is OK to eat crisps and cakes sometimes, but you should not eat too many of them. Crisps have a lot of fat and salt. Cakes, chocolate and biscuits have a lot of fat and sugar. Too much of this type of food is bad for our bodies.

Fruit is a great snack! It is very good for us and most people like its sweet taste. You should eat between two and four pieces of fruit a day. Beans and vegetables do not have much sugar or fat. They are very good for us, so we should eat a lot of **them**. Snacks like hummus with carrot and pepper are **delicious**. We should be careful, even with healthy foods. Fruit juice has got a lot of sugar, so we should not drink too much of it. Olives, meat and fish sometimes have a lot of salt.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the main idea of the passage ?

2. What do you think about snacks ?

3. How much fruit should you have every day ?

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined word "**delicious**" is the opposite of

- a. terrible b. good c. sweet d. healthy

5. The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to

- a. cakes b. crisps and cakes
c. snakes d. beans and vegetables

6. Fish sometimes have

- a. a lot of sugar b. a lot of salt
c. a lot of fat d. a lot of food (Qena-Deshna 2020)

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. There is an Egyptian food on the
a. list b. menu c. form d. book
2. You make noise in the school library.
a. should b. should have c. shouldn't d. shouldn't have

3. I went to the Pyramids last week. They are !
a. lazy b. amazing c. healthy d. fizzy
4. There are classrooms in our school.
a. much b. too many c. too much d. a lot
5. Egypt is famous for many things its delicious food.
a. answering b. including c. calling d. playing
6. How much is this book ? - Only 30
a. eggs b. pounds c. litres d. kilos
7. A is a person who brings food and drinks at a restaurant.
a. waiter b. doctor c. teacher d. carpenter
8. Are there boys in the playground ?
a. some b. any c. much d. little
9. Crisps have a lot of and salt.
a. fans b. vans c. fat d. fair
10. Chocolate and biscuits contain a lot of
a. sugar b. salt c. juice d. spices

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. You shouldn't see the doctor when you are sick. (.....)
2. There isn't any pens in the bag. (.....)
3. There are too much books on the shelves. (.....)
4. How much is the book cost ? (.....)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on : مطبخ تقليدي في المغرب

"A traditional meal in Morocco"

Review B

SB pages 64 & 65 WB pages 116 & 117



Reading

• on Lesson 1 SB page 64

Sham El-Nessim

1 What and when is it ?

Sham El-Nessim is my favourite time of the year. We enjoy it at the start of **spring**⁽¹⁾. Sham El-Nessim started in 2700 BCE!

2 What people do

Today, most Egyptians have a picnic in a **park** or next to the river with their families. Many people also go to the beach, where they make sandcastles and **swim** in the sea.

3 A recipe

On this day, we eat a lot of **special**⁽²⁾ food. Do you want to know how to enjoy feseekh ? Add lemon juice to the fish and have it with salad. It's delicious, but you should buy it from a good shop and you shouldn't eat **too much** !



4 What I did

Last year at Sham El-Nessim, we **went** to Alexandria. We visited our family and went to the beach. We rode our bikes and played games. Do you know what we are doing in this photo ? We **are painting**⁽³⁾ eggs ! We always do this. We **didn't** see our cousins last year, but we made a **video call**⁽⁴⁾. It was fun to talk to them on the **laptop**.



Do you know any other special food ? **Click on**⁽⁵⁾ the **icon**⁽⁶⁾ at the top of this website. Take a photo and write an email about it. Send us a **recipe**⁽⁷⁾ for it.

Check Vocabulary

(1) فصل الربيع (2) خاص (3) يرلون (4) مكالمه فيديو (5) ينقر / يضغط على (6) ايقونة (7) وصفة طهي

• on Lesson 1 WB page 116

Judy's shopping list

Hi Judy,

The family party⁽¹⁾ is on Saturday. There are ten people. Can you help me and buy the shopping?

Five people like fish. Five people like chicken. The children like fizzy drinks, but they aren't healthy. So, we can have orange juice. Four bottles are enough for the children. We can all drink water, so we need eight bottles. Buy some tea, too, please.

Please go to the shops and then check⁽²⁾ we have enough chairs.

Many thanks

Mona

Check Vocabulary

حفلة أسرية⁽¹⁾ | يفحص/يتأكد⁽²⁾

Listening

• on Lesson 2 SB page 65



Narrator: In the UK, many people eat pancakes at the start of spring.
How do you make pancakes?

Put all your ingredients in a bowl, and add two eggs. Stir everything together. Put some butter in a pan. When the butter is hot, you should start cooking your pancakes! Cook each pancake for 2 or 3 minutes on one side. Then cook the other side of the pancake. Eat your pancakes with honey and nuts, or with sugar and lemon juice. Hmm, they are delicious!

• on Lesson 1 WB page 116



Narrator : one

Boy 1 : I have tickets for the new play on Saturday.

Boy 2 : How exciting !

Narrator : two

Man 1 : I'd like a small salad, please.

Man 2 : Is that everything ?

Man 1 : Er, have you got any orange juice ?

Man 2 : Small or large ?

Man 1 : Large, please.

Narrator : three

Woman : First, put water in a kettle. Then, boil the water. Put the hot water in a cup with some hot chocolate. Don't add too much sugar. It isn't healthy.

Narrator : four

Girl : Last summer, we went to the Red Sea. I swam in the sea every day! It was wonderful.

Narrator : five

Woman : It's very hot today. You should drink a lot of water and you should wear a hat, too!



A week is enough

الامتحان بين يديك

مراجعة المنهج بالكامل والتمكن منه في أسبوع واحد فقط.

كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية

مراجعة المنهج بالكامل والتمكن منه في أسبوع واحد فقط.

If you got ● , you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد .
قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في نهاية كل وحدة.



Mini-Test on

Unit 4

1. Complete the following dialogue :

Mohamed and Mona are talking about using technology at school.

Mohammed : Do you use technology at your school ?

Mona : Yes, we do. We use tablets.

Mohammed : Really ? Can you use a tablet ?

Mona : Yes, I (1) _____ .

Mohammed : Which (2) _____ do you use tablets in ?

Mona : All subjects.

Mohammed : Has your class (3) _____ a smart board ?

Mona : Yes, it (4) _____ .

Mohammed : Do you use mobile phone in class ?

Mona : (5) _____ , they aren't allowed.

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- There _____ a tablet on the desk.
a. has b. are c. is d. have
- _____ there any printers here ?
a. Are b. Is c. Have d. Do
- Hany _____ his English book now.
a. reads b. is reading c. reading d. read
- Can you _____ me a text message ?
a. take b. send c. make d. do

5. _____ on the icon on your laptop.

- a. Write b. Look c. Click d. Sit

6. Ziad has got a new MP3 _____ .

- a. player b. phone c. tablet d. computer

7. I'd like to _____ a selfie at the top of the Pyramids.

- a. give b. make c. take d. top

8. Computers and mobile phones are examples of _____ .

- a. technology b. passwords
c. nature d. video games

9. A _____ is smaller than a computer.

- a. club b. sun c. tablet d. desert

10. _____ the icon on your mobile phone to open the application.

- a. Clock b. Tap c. Print d. Charge

3. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on : "Technology"

GENERAL Revision

Based on Units 4, 5 & 6

1996 : 6/1/2000 : 1/1/2000 : 1/1/2000

If you got ● , you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد ،
قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في نهاية كل وحدة.



Mini-Test on

Unit 5

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Last week, we the beach.
a. visit b. visits
c. are visiting d. visited
- Where did you go holiday ?
a. on b. of c. at d. by
- Last summer, my family to Alexandria.
a. go b. are going c. goes d. went
- The is a big strong building from the past.
a. attic b. sandcastle
c. mountain d. castle
- A is something you buy to remember a holiday.
a. project b. prize c. souvenir d. view
- I want to go to the and swim in the sea.
a. mountain b. rock c. beach d. cave
- are very friendly sea animals.
a. Sharks b. Dolphins c. Whales d. Snakes
- We had a beautiful of the city from the tower.
a. review b. view
c. interview d. viewer

9. Children enjoy building on the beach.

- a. schools b. caves
c. sandcastles d. mountains

10. There are a lot of trees in the
a. jug b. jungle c. weather d. sky

2. Read and correct the underlined word :

- I study my lessons yesterday. (.....)
- Mona didn't wanted to go into the cave. (.....)
- Yesterday, I had a picnic and rides a horse. (.....)
- What did you ate for dinner last night ? (.....)

3. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"Your favourite place"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

If you got ●, you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد ،
قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في نهاية كل وحدة.



Mini-Test on

Unit 6

1. Complete the following dialogue :

A customer is ordering food at a café.

Waiter : Good afternoon, what would you like ?

Customer : I would like (1)....., please.

Waiter : OK. Anything else ?

Customer : Yes, juice please.

Waiter : Small or (2)..... ?

Customer : (3)....., please.

Waiter : And would you (4)..... any
desserts ?

Customer : Chocolate cake, please.

Waiter : Here you are.

Customer : (5).....

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. It's cold. You wear a jacket.

a. should b. shouldn't c. have d. haven't

2. There aren't mobile phones in our class.

a. some b. much c. any d. a lot

3. How bread does Mona eat ?

a. many b. much c. long d. often

4. We should eat food every day.

a. fizzy b. unhealthy
c. healthy d. bad

5. oil is very healthy for all people.

a. Meat b. Olive c. Hummus d. Cheese

6. and cheese are my favourite food.

a. Equipment b. Petrol
c. Salad d. Sand

7. Mona thinks that the of rice pudding
is easy.

a. recipe b. road
c. recycling d. equipment

8. You can boil water in a

a. saucepan b. teaspoon
c. bowl d. cup

9. What of food do you prefer ?

a. kind b. old c. heavy d. unkind

10. To is to move a liquid around with a
spoon or stick.

a. stick b. lick c. pick d. stir

3. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :

"Your favourite food"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

End of Term Practice

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى ملفات وأخذ الإجابة الصحيحة (نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Shorouk goes to school _____.
a. alone
b. with Lubna only
c. with her mother
d. with Lubna and Alaa
2. Shorouk is in _____ stage.
a. nursery
b. preparatory
c. secondary
d. university
3. Shorouk's parents work in _____.
a. the same place
b. different places
c. the same school
d. a factory
4. _____ work in a hospital.
a. Alaa's parents
b. Lubna's parents
c. Shorouk's parents
d. No parents

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Nessma and Reem go to the school library.

Reem : Good morning, Nessma, when will we start doing our research ?

Nessma : During the break.

Reem : Great. Where (1) _____ ?

Nessma : In the school library.

Reem : Are (2) _____ ?

Nessma : Of course, I'm ready.

Reem : Is it easy to find the books we need ?

Nessma : (3) _____.

Reem : Who will help us there ?

Nessma : (4) _____.

Reem : I hope (5) _____ !

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following , then answer the questions :

My name is Mona. I want to be a doctor here in Cairo, so I always work hard at school. My favourite subjects are science and computer studies. I also want to speak good English to other children in different places. My teacher is very good, but I also like to use technology. I use a tablet to practise my English. Sometimes I use my phone, too! Last year, I learnt English in London with my family. It was fantastic! I cycled to summer school every day, and I met students from different countries. Now I have a friend from Uganda! My favourite place was a river in Cambridge. It was very beautiful, but I didn't swim in it!

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What are Mona's favourite subjects ?

2. Why does she want to speak English ?

3. Is Mona right to use technology ? Why ?

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined word "it" refers to _____.
a. Cairo b. technology c. a river d. summer school
5. Where is Mona now?
a. In Egypt b. In England c. In Uganda d. In France
6. What does Mona use to practise her English?
a. Her tablet b. Her phone c. Her laptop d. a and b
7. Mona goes to summer school by _____.
a. taxi b. train c. bicycle d. car

D. Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. There are too _____ people on this beach. Let's go to a different one.
a. many b. much c. enough d. few
2. My uncle is very _____. He chooses things wisely.
a. strong b. tall c. fast d. sensible

End of Term Practice

3. I love acting. _____ is my favourite school subject.
a. Drama b. Maths
c. Computer Studies d. Art
4. The Egyptian football team arrived _____ Uganda two days ago.
a. in b. at c. for d. from
5. On a _____ weekend, Omar reads books at the club library.
a. tropical b. physical c. spicy d. typical
6. Ahmed likes history because he loves _____ about the past.
a. learns b. to learning c. learning d. learnt
7. My father and mother are my _____.
a. grandchildren b. parents c. cousins d. daughters
8. The tourists are _____ a selfie next to the River Nile.
a. touching b. drawing c. relaxing d. taking
9. Tom is writing about his weekend in his online _____.
a. 3D printer b. diary c. mouse d. laptop
10. Why don't we _____ swimming next week?
a. go b. do c. make d. see

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. What do you have for breakfast yesterday? ()
2. There are too much salt in this recipe. ()
3. Amr shouldn't drink too many fruit juice. ()
4. Gymnastics are my favourite sport. ()

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of 70 – 80 words about a typical day in your life :

Glossary

المفردات القوية التي وردت في الوحدات
لحصول أكبر (للمزيد من المفردات القوية)

Unit 1

lessons 1 & 2

birthday	عيد ميلاد
football match	مباراة كرة قدم
game	لعبة
music	موسيقى

lessons 3 & 4

internet	الإنترنت
house	منزل
sheep	خروف - أغنام
take → took → taken	ياخذ - يستغرق

sleep → slept → slept	ينام
know → knew → known	يعرف
which	أي (تستخدم للاختيار)

* Which colour do you like ?

- The red colour.

at home	في المنزل
stay in	يقدم في

lessons 5 & 6

person	شخص
hour	ساعة (٦٠ دقيقة)
place	مكان
Africa	قارة أفريقيا
Damietta	مدينة دمياط
make → made → made	يجعل - يصنع

train	قطار / يتدرب
- People like travelling by train.	قطار
- The athlete trains for 3 hours a day.	يتدرب

Unit 2

lessons 1 & 2

lunch	وجبة الغداء
breakfast	وجبة الإفطار
photos	صور فوتوغرافية
room	حجرة / غرفة
hear → heard → heard	يسمع
get → got → got	يحصل على
drive → drove → driven	يقود
go to bed	يذهب للنوم
watch TV	يشاهد التلفاز

lessons 3 & 4

snow	جليد
winter	فصل الشتاء
China	دولة الصين
The USA	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية
listen to	يسمع إلى
go to the same school	يذهب إلى نفس المدرسة
write a list	يكتب قائمة

lessons 5 & 6

English teacher	معلم اللغة الإنجليزية
have → had → had	يملك
at school	في المدرسة
come to school	يأتي إلى المدرسة
in bed	في الفراش
possession	ملكية

Unit 3

lessons 1 & 2

football	كرة القدم
tennis	لعبة التنس

volleyball	كرة الطائرة
camel	جمال
queen	ملكة
present	هدية
fast ≠ slow	بطيء ≠ سريع
friendly ≠ unfriendly	ودود ≠ غير ودود
long : not short	طويل
short : not long	قصير

lessons 3 & 4

because	لأن
---------	-----

lessons 5 & 6

swimming	السباحة
reading	القراءة
sometimes	أحياناً
happy ≠ sad	سعيد ≠ حزين
run → ran → run	يجري

Unit 4

lessons 1 & 2

under	تحت
behind	خلف
granddad = grandfather	جد
classroom	حجرة الدراسة
use	يستخدم
big ≠ small	كبير ≠ صغير
on his desk	على مكتبه
write an email	يكتب رسالة بريد إلكتروني
look at	ينظر إلى
that's a great photo	إنها صورة رائعة

lessons 3 & 4

black shoes	حذاء أسود
puzzle	لغز

park	مزرعة
flowers	زهور
sunny	مشمس
animals	حيوانات
garden	حديقة
sit down ≠ stand up	يجلس ≠ يقف

lessons 5 & 6

shop	محل
parents	الوالدين
telephone number	رقم الهاتف

Unit 5

lessons 1 & 2

aunt	عمّة / خالة
uncle	عم / خال
mountain	جبل
bat	خفاش

Unit 6

lessons 1 & 2

Morocco	دولة المغرب
tomatoes	طماطم
rice	أرز

lessons 3 & 4

chicken pizza	بيتزا بالفرخ
fruit juice	عصير فواكه
carrots	جزر

lessons 5 & 6

orange juice	عصير برتقال
bread	خبز
cheese pizza	بيتزا بالجبن
tomato pizza	بيتزا بالطماطم

Unit 1

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"My family"

My name's Ali. I have a big family. My mum's name is Amira. She is a teacher. My dad's name is Omar. He is a doctor. I have two sisters, Sama and Samira. They are twins. I am in preparatory one. I go to Shoubra Preparatory School for boys. Mum helps us to practise our hobbies. My father also tells us funny stories in his free time, so we enjoy staying with our father in his free time. I like my family so much. It is a great family.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"Voluntary work"

I like voluntary work. My family say it is a great job in our life. My sister and I do voluntary work on Saturdays afternoon. We help in children's hospital. We play games with the children. We read stories to them, too. It's great work! You can do voluntary work in many places. For example, you can help orphan children. They really need help. Helping poor people is also important. You can give them money.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"The best person in my family"

I love all my family, but my father is the person I like most. He works hard. He buys new clothes for me every month. He gives me money every day to buy what I need. His life is busy, but he spends much time with me studying new lessons. I love him so much. When I find a problem, I discuss

it with him. Also, he helps me to practise different hobbies. He encourages me so much. He is my hero.

Test on unit 1

"A famous gymnast"

Habiba Marzouk is a top gymnast in Africa. She lives in Cairo with her family. Habiba has a very busy life. She goes to school and she studies hard. In the evenings, she trains for 5 or 6 hours. She wants to go to the Olympics. Habiba's family always helps her. She eats healthy food. All the Egyptians like Habiba and want her to achieve her goal. Last week, I met her and had a selfie with her.

Unit 2

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"My favourite subject"

My favourite subject is English. I have English every day at school. My English teacher is Mr Ayman. He is very kind. He helps me a lot. I have an English test weekly. I always get the full mark. I like watching English films on TV. I also borrow some English books from the library. That helps me improve my language a lot. I hope to travel to England to speak English well.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"School rules"

School rules are important. We always wear our school uniform. We always help each other. We always listen to the teachers carefully. We always do our homework. We never forget our pencil cases or notebooks. In the classroom, students don't talk to each other. When

I want to ask our teacher, I put my hand up.
It's important to come to school on time.
Following the school rules is useful for us.

⊙ General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"A day in my life"

I get up at 6 o'clock in the morning every day. I wash my face and have breakfast. I go to school by bus. I have six lessons a day. I come back home at 2:30 p.m. in the afternoon. I do my homework in the evening. I watch TV with my family at weekends. Sometimes, we go to the park and play on Saturdays. I go to bed early. That helps me to get up early.

⊙ Test on unit 2

"Jobs I do at home"

I always help my family at home. I get up at seven a.m. I make my bed. I go to school on time. I never get up late. After school, I have my lunch and do my homework. At night, I prepare my bag and go to bed. I don't watch TV the night before school days. At the weekends, I help my mother clean up the house. I also go shopping if my family want something.

Unit 3

⊙ General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"My favourite sports star"

Mohamed Salah is my favourite sports star. He is 1.75 meters tall. He is quite short for a footballer. He has got dark, curly hair and a beard. He usually has a big smile. He is a fast runner and he scores a lot of goals. He is very kind. He gives money to build schools and hospitals. He plays for a team in England. It's called Liverpool Football Club. Many Egyptians watch his matches. They feel very happy when Salah scores goals.

⊙ General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"A famous children's story"

My favourite story book is Alice's Adventures in Wonderland. Alice had a lot of adventures in Wonderland. She met a lot of interesting characters in Wonderland. She met the White Rabbit which was always late. She also met the Cheshire Cat which had a big smile. At last, she met the Queen of Hearts. She was always angry and shouted at people. Children like reading stories like this. I sometimes go to the school library to borrow some stories. That's my favourite hobby.

⊙ General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"A review on my favourite book"

I love reading so much. Last week, I read a book about life in the mountains. The book is good, but there was some information I don't believe it. I asked my teacher. He told me it is a children's story! I understood the idea and told the story to all my friends. They were very surprised when I told them. I think reading is very useful for all people. I advise everyone to read a lot.

⊙ Test on unit 3

"My best friend"

I have many friends. But Sameh is my best friend. I met him first at school. He is tall and thin. He has a long, curly hair. He is very kind and funny. We walk to school every day together. He is very good at maths. He always helps me at maths. I help him at English. We both like playing football. We go to the club on Fridays to practise football. Sameh is a real friend. I respect him so much.

Unit 4

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"Technology"

I love technology. My favourite hobby is playing video games. I usually play them on my laptop, but sometimes I play them on my mobile phone. I'd like to spend all day playing video games, but I have to go to school. My favourite lesson is computer studies. At break, I look at websites for new video games. Modern technology changed our lives a lot. Nowadays, most people use it in many ways. Young people use it all the time.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"I like nature more than technology"

I love nature. I like walking and watching trees, animals, flowers and insects all around us. I don't like being in the house; I like being in the garden and looking at the sky. At school, I always go outside at break. I don't go outside when it's very hot or cold! Also, technology is very important for our life. Technology makes our life easier. Both nature and technology are important for our life.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"My favourite place"

Egypt is a beautiful country. There are many interesting places in it. The Pyramids in Giza are my favourite place. I like visiting the Pyramids with my family. My father knows a lot about the Pyramids. He likes reading about the ancient Egyptians. He tells us many interesting information each time when we visit the Pyramids. We always take pictures next to the Pyramids and the Sphinx. I am very proud of my country.

Test on unit 4

"How to keep safe online"

When you are online, you need to follow some rules to stay safe. First, keep your password secret. Don't make friends with people you don't know online. Don't tell people your personal information. Don't send photos to people you don't know. If you are worried about something, tell a parent or a teacher. Don't answer a phone call or a video call from people you don't know. You must be very careful with using modern technology.

Unit 5

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"A picnic at Al Azhar Park"

In October, we visited my uncle, aunt and cousins in Cairo. We had a picnic at Al Azhar Park. We ate delicious food. Then, we played games. My brother, Ali rode his bike. We enjoyed our time. Al Azhar Park is a beautiful place to go to. You can do many activities there. It's really wonderful. I hope to go there one day with my friends. It will be a very nice trip. But we should keep the park clean.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"A day on the beach"

Last summer, the weather was very hot. We decided to go to the beach in Hurghada. Hurghada is a beautiful city. My sister Mariam made a sandcastle on the beach. I swam in the sea and climbed the mountains. We enjoyed our time a lot. My mother made us a delicious meal. My father told us some funny stories. It was a typical day. In the evening, I enjoyed the beautiful view on the beach. I'm looking forward to visiting Hurghada again next summer.

⊗ **General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6**

"A holiday in Paris"

Paris is a great city for a holiday because there is so much to see and do. The food is delicious. I ate a lot of new things, for example, snails! One day we climbed the Eiffel Tower, and from the top we had a view of the city. We visited museums and had a picnic in the Luxembourg Gardens. We also went on a boat on the River Seine. Near our hotel there was a busy market. I bought a T-shirt and some postcards. People in Paris are so kind. They helped me a lot.

⊗ **Test on unit 5**

"A trip I made"

Last summer, I went on a trip to London with my school. My favourite place was Windsor Castle. We went there by train. We walked around the castle. My favourite activity was a ride on the London Eye, because there was a beautiful view of the city from the top. This trip helped us to improve our English as we spoke English all the time. It was a very nice trip. We stayed there for two weeks.

Unit 6

⊗ **General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2**

"Rice pudding"

Roz Bel Laban is an Egyptian rice pudding. Its ingredients are rice, water, milk and sugar. Some people like it very tasty so they add much sugar to it. Other people like to add some nuts and raisins on the top. I like to add some cinnamon. You can try to make it by yourself at home; there are many recipes for this dish online. Choose your favourite and you can ask your mum for help.

⊗ **General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4**

"My favourite dish"

My favourite dish is koshari. It is a delicious dish with rice, pasta and tomatoes. There isn't any meat in it. It is very popular in Egypt. I love it very much. All my family love it. You can eat this meal in many restaurants. All the Egyptians like this meal. My mother makes it at home once a week. I like it a lot. Also, I have koshari with my friends after playing football on holidays.

⊗ **General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6**

"A visit to a café"

I visited a nice café with my family and my friends yesterday. It looks over a beautiful view. My mum had fish. My dad and I had pizza with my brother. We had cakes after lunch. I had basbousa and my brother had kunafa. I prefer the café that looks over the Nile. The view is fantastic. I enjoy fresh air. My friends like taking photos from the windows that overlooks the nice view.

⊗ **Test on unit 6**

"A traditional meal in Morocco"

Tagine is a traditional meal in Morocco. It is a stew with meat, vegetables, fruit and spices. It has an amazing taste. The name tagine comes from the cooking pot for this food. If you want to try this meal, you have to visit Morocco. I went to Morocco last month. When I went to a restaurant to have lunch, I ate tagine. It's really delicious. I hope to have it again.

Listening Texts

نصوص استماع

⊙ Audioscript

Girl 1 : Hi, Lama. Is that a new bag ?
 Girl 2 : Hi, Injy. No, it's my sister's bag.
 Girl 1 : It's big. What's in it ?
 Girl 2 : This is my pencil case. It's red.
 Girl 1 : Is that your book ?
 Girl 2 : Yes. It's very good. It's about animals.
 Girl 1 : Is that a ball in your bag ?
 Girl 2 : No, it's an orange ! I like oranges.
 Girl 1 : I prefer apples. Is that your phone ?
 Girl 2 : Yes, it is. Look ! It's ten o'clock. Time for our English class.

⊙ Audioscript

Narrator :

- | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1. washed, talked | 2. called, waited |
| 3. blue, duck | 4. cake, home |
| 5. shop, chick | 6. father, brother |
| 7. candy, July | 8. tail, gate |

Unit 1

1 Lessons 1 & 2

I like sports. I play basketball on Mondays. It is my favourite sport. I play it with my friends. It is an interesting sport.

2 Lessons 5 & 6

Gymnastics is a difficult sport. The gymnast trains for many hours daily. He must balance his hobby, work and study to achieve his dream.

3 Test on unit 1

Habiba Marzouk lives in Cairo. She has a very busy life. She is a top gymnast in Africa. She wants to go to the Olympics.

Unit 2

1 Lessons 3 & 4

My school is far from my house. I cycle to school every morning. It's healthy and it makes me arrive there on time.

2 Lessons 5 & 6

Amira is twelve years old. She is from Hurghada. She is in preparatory one at school. She likes science and maths.

3 Test on unit 2

Akeyo lives in Nairobi. Her school is far away. Her mum and dad drive her there. She goes to the library to read during the break.

Unit 3

1 Lessons 1 & 2

Doaa Elghobashy plays volleyball for Egypt. She's very tall. She's 180 cm tall. She's strong and fast. She always has a big smile.

2 Lessons 5 & 6

My best friend is called Basel. He has got straight hair and brown eyes. He is kind. He likes reading and playing video games.

3 Test on unit 3

Yunis has got short, dark curly hair. He likes history, but he doesn't like art because he is not good at drawing or painting.

Unit 4

1 Lessons 1 & 2

Ziad is in his classroom. There are two laptops in the classroom. There is a printer, too. Omar is printing his homework.

2 Test on unit 4

Soha loves nature. She likes watching the trees, animals, flowers and insects all around us. She likes being in the garden and looking at the sky.

Unit 5

1 Lessons 1 & 2

Last week, we had a picnic at Al Azhar Park in Cairo. We ate delicious food. Then, we played games and Ali rode on his bike.

2 Lessons 5 & 6

Last summer, Andy travelled to Egypt because she wanted to learn Arabic. She went to a language school in Cairo. She had wonderful time.

3 Test on unit 5

When I was eight, we went to Siwa. We swam in the lake. We saw camels and slept in a tent. It was my favourite holiday.

Unit 6

1 Lessons 1 & 2

There are a lot of rice pudding recipes online. There's enough rice pudding for the whole family. There's a lot of sugar in the recipe but I like sweet food.

2 Lessons 5 & 6

I visited this café last weekend with my mum, my dad and my brother. We chose this café for lunch. Its walls were green and white.

3 Test on unit 6

Mazin likes tagine. In Morocco, tagine is a traditional meal. Its taste is amazing! The name tagine comes from the cooking pot for this food.

End of term practice

Shorouk is 12. She is in preparatory 1. She goes to school with her sister Lubna. Shorouk's parents are doctors at a hospital.

Answers of Advanced level student's Exercises

إجابات تدريبات طبق ما تعلمته واختبر ذكائك

Unit 1 :	1. b	2. d	3. b	4. d	5. b
Unit 2 :	1. c	2. a	3. b	4. b	5. d
Unit 3 :	1. d	2. d	3. b	4. a	5. d
Unit 4 :	1. d	2. a	3. a	4. b	5. c
Unit 5 :	1. a	2. b	3. d	4. a	5. d
Unit 6 :	1. b	2. c	3. a	4. b	5. b



Sheet 1

On Unit 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :



- She is playing the piano in the school.
a. band b. ground
c. magazine d. laboratory
- Heba is working in a charity. She likes work.
a. maths b. voluntary
c. school d. pair

2 Read and correct the underlined words :



- Does you play chess? ()
- Mona usually get up early. ()

Dictation الإملاء



يختار المعلم مجموعة واحدة من المجموعات الآتية لكل طالب الاختبار مدى استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

A	band		توأم
	chess		مباراة كرة قدم
	voluntary work		الجدد الأكبر
B	list		الإنترنت
	timetable		بنك
	city		حديقة عامة

Sheet 2

On Unit 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :



- I always go to Paris for a holiday. It is a holiday for me.
a. physical b. musical
c. typical d. formal
- The school rings at 8 : 00 a.m.
a. ball b. bell
c. bill d. pin

2 Read and correct the underlined words :



- It is Hudas notebook. ()
- The girl name is Lamees. ()

Dictation الإملاء



يختار المعلم مجموعة واحدة من المجموعات الآتية لكل طالب الاختبار مدى استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

A	typical		درس
	subject		ملعب
	drama		تربية فنية
B	school uniform		فريضة
	canoe		ثقافة
	snowmobile		قاس / غير طبيب

بطاقة متابعة

جزء الهدف منه التقييم اليومي لاستيعاب الطالب للدروس

Sheet 3

On Unit 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I want to go to the barber's because my _____ is long.

- a. bread b. bird
c. beard d. bride

2. Mohammed Salah has got _____ hair. It's not straight.

- a. blond b. curly
c. long d. short

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Does she like watch TV?

2. Do they loves learning maths?

Dictation الإملاء

يختار المعلم مجموعة واحدة من المجموعات الآتية لكل طالب لإختبار مدى استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

A	beard	شعر مجعد
	fans	يحرز / يسجل
	straight hair	طبيعي / عادي

B	sensible	ماهر
	online	قرارات
	learning	مشغول

Sheet 4

On Unit 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Put some paper in the _____ and then you can use it.

- a. mouse b. keyboard
c. printer d. screen

2. When your phone battery is low, you can use the _____.

- a. fridge b. charger
c. TV d. cooker

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Is Salma wear glasses?

2. Malak watches TV now.

Dictation الإملاء

يختار المعلم مجموعة واحدة من المجموعات الآتية لكل طالب لإختبار مدى استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

A	laptop	كمبيوتر لوحي
	whiteboard	رميل الدراسة
	selfie	تليفون محمول

B	lunchtime	بقلد
	eagle	بالغ من العمر
	put up	أخطأ القواعد



Sheet 5

On Unit 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Write your _____ at the end of the email. 2
 a. address b. title
 c. signature d. age
- What does this _____ mean? - It means "No parking!"
 a. pan b. email
 c. snail d. sign

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- How did you went to school? ()
- Last week, my father buys our tickets. ()

Dictation الإملاء

يختار المعلم مجموعة واحدة من المجموعات الآتية لكل طالب لإختبار مدى استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

A	postcard boat trip bat		بطاقة / رسالة رسالة بريد إلكتروني شريك
B	response emotion repeat		سائح توقيع يسأمر

Sheet 6

On Unit 6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A _____ works in a restaurant. 2
 a. teacher b. doctor
 c. nurse d. waiter
- Give me the _____ to choose my favourite meal.
 a. list b. ticket
 c. menu d. passport

2 Read and correct the underlined words:

- You should to clean your teeth in the morning. ()
- You shouldn't drink a lot of water every day. ()

Dictation الإملاء

يختار المعلم مجموعة واحدة من المجموعات الآتية لكل طالب لإختبار مدى استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

A	menu large salad waiter		بيتزا بالجينة زبون عسير يرتقال
B	chef weekend details		وجبة يشمل / يتضمن طائر